

**Item: I**  
**Project Review Checklists**







## CONTENTS

	<u>Page Number</u>
1) INTRODUCTION	2
2) START-UP SITE VISIT	3
3) CITIZEN PARTICIPATION REVIEW	5
4) ADMINISTRATIVE/PROFESSIONAL PROCUREMENT REVIEW	7
5) FAIR HOUSING REVIEW	9
6) ENVIRONMENTAL REQUIREMENTS REVIEW	10
7) FEDERAL LABOR STANDARDS REVIEW	12
8) ACQUISITION (PUBLIC FACILITY) REVIEW	14
9) DEMOLITION (Section 104d) REVIEW	18
10) RELOCATION ASSISTANCE REVIEW	20
11) FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT REVIEW	26
12) INDIVIDUAL HOUSING REVIEW-REHAB	28
13) HOUSING REHABILITATION REVIEW I	29
14) HOUSING REHABILITATION REVIEW II	39
15) INDIVIDUAL HOUSING ANALYSIS-DOWNPAYMENT	47
16) PROCUREMENT REVIEW FOR PUBLIC WORKS	48
17) CASH MATCH/LEVERAGE ASSESSMENT	51
18) CLOSEOUT REVIEW	52
19) AUDIT REVIEW	54
20) FINANCIAL PLAN FORM	56



## **INTRODUCTION**

This document is for use by Georgia Department of Community Affairs CDBG staff in reviewing local CDBG projects. The checklists are intended to document whether or not a local CDBG recipient is in compliance with applicable state or federal requirements. CDBG recipients may use the form as a way to understand DCA expectations concerning compliance.

To answer the checklists questions, CDBG staff will review local program records, interview appropriate local program administrators, make site visits, etc. DCA will maintain the completed checklists and comments as compliance documentation.

In the event non-compliance with law or regulation is found, DCA will work with local governments to correct the problem. To the maximum extent possible, DCA staff will help recipients comply with program requirements.



## START-UP SITE VISIT REPORT

Grantee: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant : \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Discussed with: \_\_\_\_\_  
(circle items discussed)

### 1.0 Grant Award Package

- 1.1 Acceptance within required period
- 1.2 Signature Cards and correct number of signatories
- 1.3 General and Special Condition compliance
- 1.4 DCA CDBG Staff resources / responsibilities
- 1.5 Local official/interested party overseeing project? (Technical/Admin)

1.6 Recipient's Manual – local government has their copy?    yes    no

### 2.0 Financial Management / Audits

- 2.1 On-site financial management technical assistance needed?    yes    no
- 2.2 Setting-up checking account– only CDBG funds, non-interest bearing, \$5,000 limit on- hand.
- 2.3 Force account records, if applicable
- 2.4 Time sheet requirements, if applicable
- 2.5 Audits
- 2.6 Budget
- 2.7 Limits on CDBG \$'s for Admin and Arch/Eng fees
- 2.8 Local Match and Leverage (amount and use)
  - 2.8.1 Leverage points awarded and method of monitoring for match and leverage spent by local government
- 2.9 Financial Management and Accounting System:
  - Local Bookkeeper \_\_\_\_\_
  - Drawdowns – who approves? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Invoices – who approves? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Bank reconciliation – who performs? \_\_\_\_\_
  - Checks – who signs? \_\_\_\_\_

### 2.10 Conflict of Interest

### 3.0 Administration

- 3.1 Procurement Standards/contracts – method of selecting/advertising/RFP/RFQ If completed, fill out Procurement Review form
- 3.2 Administrator Contracts – basic requirements (See Chapter 1, Section 18 of Recipients' Manual). If completed, fill out Procurement Review form
- 3.3 Record keeping & filing system – minimum records to be kept on-site  
Where will others be kept? \_\_\_\_\_
- 3.4 Amendments
- 3.5 Quarterly Reports – use back of form to keep us updated
- 3.6 Labor Standard provisions/"Common Rule" contract provisions
- 3.7 Clearance of General Contractor
- 3.8 Notice of Contract Action. There is a 10% draw limit until form is submitted
- 3.9 Weekly payrolls – signed by an officer / anyone on job must be on payroll / date stamped when received / notify rep. of any difficulty in collecting them



- 3.10 Pre-Construction Conference – who should attend, notify rep. of date
- 3.11 Timetables / Expiration Date
- 3.12 Send in updated Disclosure Reports when applicable
- 3.13 Citizens Participation
- 3.14 Post-award hearing within 60 days of award – document with tear sheet, agenda and minutes
- 3.15 Section 504 accessibility requirements for hearing locations
- 3.16 Final Public Hearing after Final Quarterly Report completed – document
- 4.0 Environmental – Historic / Floodplains / Wetlands
  - 4.1 Preparation of Assessment & Environmental Review Record
  - 4.2 Exempt and excluded activities – FOE in ERR for admin. & design
  - 4.3 Environmental Special Conditions, if applicable. Clear prior to completion of assessment
  - 4.4 Army Corps permit for wetland disturbing activities
  - 4.5 Is any part of project in a floodplain? yes      no
  - 4.6 Cannot complete E.R. until historic preservation compliance is met (except for housing only grants). Must not begin any aspect of entire project except for exempt activities
  - 4.7 Programmatic Agreement for housing rehab of historic properties
  - 4.8 Publications – Concurrent Notice / Floodplain Notices / tear sheets
  - 4.9 Comment periods and Request for Release of Funds. Funds are released in Environmental Clearance letter from Rick Huber. Keep in ERR
  - 4.10 Coordination with other involved Federal or State Agencies. Document in ERR.
- 5.0 Beneficiaries / Fair Housing / Civil Rights / Section 3
  - 5.1 Fair Housing actions. Put up poster
  - 5.2 Civil rights data collection
  - 5.3 Section 3 requirements
  - 5.4 Examine low/mod income benefit surveys. Are they consistent with application? yes      no
  - 5.5 Actual Accomplishments – how will benefit be measured? Review numbers on DCA-2 and DCA-6 forms

<u>Item #</u>	<u>Comments</u>	<u>COMMENTS AND FOLLOW-UP</u>	

Additional "Start-up Site Visit(s)" required?      yes      no

Acquisition applicable?      yes      no      If yes, what type do you anticipate?

Signature of Program Representative: \_\_\_\_\_



## CITIZEN PARTICIPATION REVIEW

RECIPIENT: \_\_\_\_\_

GRANT#: \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEWED BY: \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEW DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

	YES	NO	COMMENTS ADDED	N/A
<b>Step 1: Check the Recipient's Preapplication Participation Advertisements:</b>				
• Did the Recipient hold at least one public hearing (within the locality) prior to submission of the Application to DCA?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did the Recipient publish notice of the public hearing not less than five (5) days prior to the hearing in the non-legal section of a local newspaper of general circulation (substantiated by documented evidence in the Recipient's File)?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Date of Publication: _____				
• Date of Hearing: _____				
<b>Step 2: Check the Recipient's Post-Application Public Hearing:</b>				
• Did the Recipient hold at least one public briefing to discuss approved activities within sixty (60) days of the Grant Award?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did the Recipient publish notice of the Public Briefing not less than five (5) days prior to the briefing in the non-legal section of a local newspaper of general circulation (substantiated by documented evidence in the Recipient's files)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Date of Publication: _____				
• Date of Hearing: _____				



	COMMENTS			
	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>ADDED</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Step 3: Check the location of the program records:</b>				
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the location of Program Records is other than the Recipient's normal place of business, was DCA officially notified of the location?</li> </ul>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the location of Program Records is other than the Recipient's normal place of business was the minimum information required by DCA available?</li> </ul>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**COMMENTS:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**CORRECTIVE ACTIONS:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## ADMINISTRATIVE/PROFESSIONAL PROCUREMENT REVIEW

Grantee: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant #: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

### Administrative Procurement (only if paid with CDBG funds)

Request for Proposals or Request for Qualifications:

Date Published: \_\_\_\_\_ Deadline for responses: \_\_\_\_\_

Newspaper: \_\_\_\_\_

Minimum of 7 firms RFP/RFQ mailed to and responses:

#1: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#2: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#3: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#4: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#5: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#6: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#7: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Other Proposals received: (List others on reverse) \_\_\_\_\_

Was a scoring system used? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Is it acceptable? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Firm/Company selected: \_\_\_\_\_

Total Contract Amount: \_\_\_\_\_

CDBG Amount: \_\_\_\_\_

Other Sources Amount: \_\_\_\_\_

### Architectural/ Engineering Procurement (only if paid with CDBG funds)

Request for Proposals or Request for Qualifications:

Date Published: \_\_\_\_\_ Deadline for responses: \_\_\_\_\_

Newspaper: \_\_\_\_\_

Minimum of 10 firms RFP/RFQ mailed to and responses:

#1: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#2: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#3: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#4: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#5: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No



#6: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#7: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#8: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#9: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

#10: \_\_\_\_\_ Response received? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Other Proposals received: (List others on reverse) \_\_\_\_\_

Was a scoring system used? ☐ Yes ☐ No Is it acceptable? ☐ Yes ☐ No

Firm/Company selected: \_\_\_\_\_ Total Contract Amount: \_\_\_\_\_  
 CDBG Amount: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Other Sources Amount: \_\_\_\_\_

**Administrative Contract Review  
 (only if paid with CDBG funds)**

**Are the following basic elements included in the Administrative Contract?**

1. A clear description of the scope of work to be performed by the consultant or other service provider. ☐ Yes ☐ No
2. A listing of specific responsibilities, tasks, goals, and milestones along with dates and deadlines that are clearly described in the contract along with provisions for recourse if the consultant or other service provider fails to perform by the deadlines imposed. ☐ Yes ☐ No
3. A reference to the applicable CDBG Applicants' and Recipients' manuals and a statement requiring the consultant or other service provider to adhere to all applicable requirements in the manuals (including all requirements referenced in the manuals) as well as to other directives issued by DCA. ☐ Yes ☐ No
4. Applicable dates of the contract and provisions for termination. ☐ Yes ☐ No

COMMENTS:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

Signature of CDBG Program Representative: \_\_\_\_\_



## FAIR HOUSING REVIEW CHECKLIST

Recipient: \_\_\_\_\_

Reviewer: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant No.: \_\_\_\_\_

Date Review Completed: \_\_\_\_\_

Is follow-up required? \_\_\_ yes \_\_\_ no

**PURPOSE:** Local government recipients of CDBG assistance certify that they will “affirmatively further fair housing”. Similarly, the State as a recipient and grantor of federal funds certifies that it will monitor the efforts of local government recipients to “affirmatively further fair housing”. This checklist is designed to document local actions as well as State review actions and conclusions concerning local efforts to further fair housing. The suggestions outlined herein are not all inclusive of possible fair housing actions but are meant to be suggestive of local government actions.

**Instructions:** Check any of the local actions undertaken by the recipient. Enter a description of other actions taken. In the Documentation section list local evidence reviewed, dates of public meetings, etc. Attach copies of appropriate documentation if available, i.e. agendas, flyers, etc.

### LOCAL ACTIONS:

Resolution supporting State and/or  
Federal Fair Housing Law(s).

☐

Distribute Fair Housing brochures  
at public meetings or hearings.

☐

Conduct a Public Information  
Campaign on Fair Housing.

☐

Post Fair Housing Posters at City  
Hall or other public buildings.

☐

Include Fair Housing discussion  
on public hearing agenda.

☐

Provide Fair Housing information  
to relocatees.

☐

Other (List)

☐

### DOCUMENTATION:

### RECOMMENDATIONS:



## ENVIRONMENTAL REVIEW

RECIPIENT \_\_\_\_\_

GRANT # \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEW DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEWED BY \_\_\_\_\_

Follow up needed?      Yes      No

	COMMENT			
	YES	NO	ADDED	N/A
<b>Step 1: Check the Environmental Review Record (file):</b>				
• Is there an Environmental Review Record?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is the Environmental Review Record available for public review.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Does the Environmental Review Record document the environmental review process, including:				
• Coordination with other involved Federal or State agencies?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Environmental Assessment?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Public notices?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Response to public comments?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Request for Release of Funds and Certification?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If appropriate, is there a determination of exemption or categorical exclusion?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is the determination signed by certifying official?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was the determination transmitted to DCA, receipt acknowledged by DCA and clearance obtained?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is there evidence of compliance with environmental Requirements other than NEPA (i.e., Statutory Checklist)?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**NOTE: IF ENTIRE PROJECT IS EXEMPT OR EXCLUDED, STOP HERE**

**Step 2: Check the Environmental Assessment format:**

• Did the environmental assessment describe:				
• Project location and description?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Environmental impacts?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Alternatives considered?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Mitigation measures considered?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Sources of data?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did the Assessment conclude with either:				
• A Finding of No Significant Effect or,	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• A Finding of significant Effect?				
(indicate which) _____	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENT ADDED N/A</u>	
<b>Step 3: Check the Public Notice(s) and Comment Periods</b>				
• Is there evidence that the FONSI and the NOI/RROF or the Concurrent Notice was published?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is there evidence the FONSI and NOI/RROF or Concurrent Notice was sent to:				
• Interested individuals and groups?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Appropriate public agencies?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Published in a newspaper of general circulation?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Posted in a local post office and substations if not able to publish?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is there evidence in the ERR of the proper minimum time period for public comment on the Notice(s)?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Step 4: Actions taken concerning Request for Release for Funds and Certifications:**

• Was the Request for Release of Funds and Certification completed on the required form?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was it signed and dated by the Certifying Official?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If the Certifying Official is not the Chief Elected Official is there evidence that the C.E.O. has designated the person signing the RROF/Certification as the Certifying Official?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did the recipient commit project funds only after the project funds were released and the general environmental condition cleared by DCA?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is there evidence in the ERR of DCA release and clearance of the environmental General Condition?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**CORRECTIVE ACTIONS:**

---



---



---

**FOLLOW-UP CONTACTS:**

---



## LABOR STANDARDS REVIEW

RECIPIENT \_\_\_\_\_

GRANT # \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEW DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEWED BY \_\_\_\_\_

Follow up needed?

Yes

No

### Step 1: Record the following information:

- Contract Name: \_\_\_\_\_
- General Contractor: \_\_\_\_\_
- Contract Amount: \_\_\_\_\_
- Wage Decision No.: \_\_\_\_\_ Bid Opening Date: \_\_\_\_\_
- Date Contract Executed: \_\_\_\_\_ Construction State Date: \_\_\_\_\_

	COMMENT			
	YES	NO	ADDED	N/A
<b>Step 2: Check for Wage Rate Determination:</b>				
• Were wage rate determinations requested from DCA?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were wage rates included in the solicitation specifications?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was correct decision, including all applicable modifications, used?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was DCA contacted 10 days prior to bid to confirm?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were additional classifications requested from DCA?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Step 3: Check for Contractual Provisions and Certification:

• Are minutes from pre-construction conference in file?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was most recent labor standards provision included in solicitation and contracts?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

### Step 4: Check for Verification of Contractor Eligibility:

• Were verifications requested and received to determine contractor eligibility prior to contract execution?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

### Step 5: Check for Recipient monitoring/enforcement of Labor Standards:

• Were wage rate determinations and labor posters on the job site?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were Statement of Compliance and payrolls received on a weekly basis?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did an officer or owner of the construction firm certify the payrolls?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



---

	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENT ADDED</u>	<u>N/A</u>
• If not, is authorization (signed by the owner or an officer) on file for the person who signed certification of payrolls?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were the contractors/subcontractors payroll reports checked for accuracy and did they contain required information?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were worker interviews conducted and checked against payroll reports?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were a representative number of trades covered, at least one in each category? No. of Employee Interviews: _____	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was Certificate of Registration for each apprentice employed on file?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Was overtime paid?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Step 6: Review the actions taken by Recipient to investigate and follow-up violations:**

• Were investigations conducted in a timely manner?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were records and documents sufficient to support the findings?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were appropriate cases referred to DCA?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**Program Representative Comments:**

---



---

**Compliance Officer Comments:**

---



---

**Follow-up Needed:**

---



---



## ACQUISITION (U.R.A.) REVIEW

RECIPIENT \_\_\_\_\_ REVIEW DATE \_\_\_\_\_  
GRANT # \_\_\_\_\_ REVIEWED BY \_\_\_\_\_

---

**a) Current Status** Check: **Public Facility** ☐ or **Housing** ☐

Number of acquisitions: proposed \_\_\_\_\_ completed \_\_\_\_\_

Types of acquisitions: Easement # \_\_\_\_\_ Right-of-way # \_\_\_\_\_

Real Property # \_\_\_\_\_ Voluntary Transaction # \_\_\_\_\_

Number of cases appealed or complaint filed: \_\_\_\_\_

Number of demolitions: proposed \_\_\_\_\_ completed \_\_\_\_\_ CDBG \$ \_\_\_\_\_ other \_\_\_\_\_

Number of proposed "Occupied" or "Vacant Occupiable" demolitions: \_\_\_\_\_

Number of proposed "Vacant dilapidated" demolitions: \_\_\_\_\_

*Note: any demolitions will require a Section 104(d) review*

### **b) Check the Recipient's compliance documentation**

	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>
a) Are files available for review?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b) Do they contain sufficient documentation?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

### **c) Check individual acquisition files**

To complete the next section, the reviewer should chose a representative number of case files to examine for compliance documentation. Additional sheets should be attached if more than 2 files were examined.

How many files were reviewed? \_\_\_\_\_



**Part II**  
**Acquisition Individual Case File Review**

**CASE 1**

**CASE 2**

**1. Record the following information:**

- |                          |  |  |
|--------------------------|--|--|
| a) Name of Owner:        |  |  |
| b) Location of Property: |  |  |
| c) Number of bedrooms:   |  |  |
| d) Type of Acquisition:  |  |  |

<i>Comment</i>				<i>Comment</i>			
<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Added</u>	<u>N.A.</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Added</u>	<u>N.A.</u>

**2. Notice to Owner:**

Is there documented evidence that the owner was notified of the Recipient's interest in acquiring the property (Preliminary Acquisition Notice) and the basic protections of law and regulation (HUD Brochure).

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

**3. Check for Appraisal:**

- |  |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |
|--|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a) Was there an appraisal to establish FMV?  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b) If not, was Fair Market Value estimated less than \$2,500 people based on available data? | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c) Did the owner waive right to appraisal?   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d) Did the owner donate property?<br>Note: Attach copy of Waiver if "no" on 3b or 3c.        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e) Is a copy of the appraisal in the file?   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f) Was a qualified, state certified, independent appraiser used?                             | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| g) Was the owner invited to accompany the appraiser?   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| h) Was there a review appraisal recommending or approving the value of the property?         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



- i) What was the appraised value?  
(or estimated value if less than \$2,500)

\_\_\_\_\_

#### 4. Check the Written Purchase Offer

- a) Is there a copy of the Offer to Purchase in the file?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

- b) Is there a statement of the "Basis of Compensation" included with the Offer?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

- c) Amount of Offer (Just Compensation):

\_\_\_\_\_

- d) Date of delivery of Purchase Offer:

\_\_\_\_\_

- e) Date owner accepted Offer:

\_\_\_\_\_

- f) Date of Settlement:

\_\_\_\_\_

- g) Date of Payment Check:

\_\_\_\_\_

- i) Amount of Payment:

\_\_\_\_\_

- j) If condemnation, date Just Compensation deposited with Court:

\_\_\_\_\_

#### 5. Check Settlement Procedures:

- a) Does file contain a copy of conveyance documentation (title, deed, bill of sale, etc...)?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

Type:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- b) Was a Statement of Settlement costs in the file? (fee simple acquisition)

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

- c) Was there proof of payment (i.e., cancelled check) in the file?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐



Case 1				Case 2			
<i>Comment</i>				<i>Comment</i>			
<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Added</u>	<u>N.A.</u>	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Added</u>	<u>N.A.</u>

**6. If this is a "Voluntary Transaction", does the acquisition meet the following conditions?**

- |    |   |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |                          |
|----|---|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| a) | No specific site or property needs to be acquired for the project;  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b) | The acquired property is not part of a designated redevelopment area where substantially all of the property is to be acquired;   | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c) | The Owner was informed in writing that the Recipient will not use its power of "eminent domain" to acquire the property in the event negotiations fail to result in an amicable agreement ; | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d) | The Owner was not informed by the recipient of any "intent" to acquire the property; and  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e) | The Recipient informed the Owner in writing before entering into contract of what is estimated to be "Fair Market Value" of the property. (Copy of documentation must be attached.)         | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



## SECTION 104 (d) DEMOLITION REVIEW

**Owner:** \_\_\_\_\_ **# of Bedrooms:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Address:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Sq. Footage:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Date of Demolition:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Occupied:** \_\_\_\_\_

### 1. Applicability of Section 104(d) One-for-One Replacement Housing:

	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>	<u>N/A</u>
a) Was the demolished occupied unit a "low and moderate income dwelling unit"?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Rent/Utilities: \$ _____				
FMR: \$ _____				
b) If vacant, was demolished "low and moderate income dwelling unit" occupied within 3 months prior to the date of the demolition contract?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c) Was demolished vacant "low and moderate income dwelling unit" suitable for rehab? (If no, attach a copy of the Rehab Feasibility Test)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Continue, if answer is "yes" on 1a) or (b) or (c)

### 2. If applicable, is there evidence that a "low and moderate income" replacement unit has been or will be:

a) Identified?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
address: _____				
# of bedrooms: _____				
b) Provided within 3 years of the start of demolition; or	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Unavailable for occupancy for more than one year prior to date of submission of Anti Displacement Plan	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Source: _____				
Date Provided: _____				
c) Located within recipient's jurisdiction?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
d) At least equal to the # of bedrooms removed and sufficient in the number of bedrooms and size to house at least the # of occupants that were housed in the demolished unit in accordance with applicable housing occupancy codes?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Sq. Footage: _____				
# of Bedrooms: _____				
e) Provided in "Standard" Condition?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
f) Designed to remain low/mod income dwelling				



units for at least 10 years from date of initial occupancy of the units? (Replacement dwelling units may include public and existing housing receiving Section 8 project-based assistance.)

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

Base Rent: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Utilities: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Total: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

FMR: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

- g) If applicable, rehabilitated and vacant for 3 months prior to date of construction contract and the previous tenant(s) was not displaced as a direct results of an assisted activity?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

**Comments:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Note:** If new unit does not meet all of the applicable criteria above, the unit is disqualified.

## SUMMARY

**DEFICIENCIES:**

**COMMENTS:**

**CORRECTIVE ACTION NEEDED:**

**FINDINGS:** Yes( ) No ( )



## PROGRAM REVIEW

REVIEWED BY \_\_\_\_\_ FOLLOW-UP NEEDED: YES NO

Types of relocations proposed:      Owner \_\_\_\_\_      Renter \_\_\_\_\_  
Business \_\_\_\_\_      Temporary \_\_\_\_\_

Is the Recipient maintaining a Relocation Management Report?

<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>	<u>N/A</u>
------------	-----------	-----------------	------------

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

a. Has the community officially adopted a Program Policy Statement?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

Date of Resolution: \_\_\_\_\_

b. Does the Statement incorporate the current “Fair Market Rent” Schedules by reference or attachment?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

c. Does the Statement include or reference the current Moving Expense Schedule?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

d. Does the statement describe Appeal procedures?






e. If applicable, are “Optional” benefits described and complied with?

☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

f. If applicable, is there a Down Payment Assistance policy and has it been complied with?






g. Does the Statement include a methodology for determining utility costs?

□ □ □ □



## PART II RELOCATION CASE REVIEW

### APPLICABILITY

#### CASE 1

Uniform Act ☐  
 Section 104(d) ☐  
 Last Resort ☐  
 "Optional" Payment ☐

#### CASE 2

Uniform Act ☐  
 Section 104(d) ☐  
 Last Resort ☐  
 "Optional" Payment ☐

#### STEPS:

		<u>CASE 1</u>	<u>CASE 2</u>		
1.	<b>Record the following information:</b>				
	a. Name of Relocatee	_____	_____		
	b. Address:	_____	_____		
	c. Homeowner or tenant?	_____	_____		
	d. Low/Mod Income Occupants?	_____	_____		
	e. Temporary Relocation necessary?	_____	_____		
		<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>	<u>N/A</u>
2.	<b>CHECK ELIGIBILITY DOCUMENTATION</b>				
	a. Is there an individual file for each displaced family?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	b. Do personal information records verify "Gross Household Income" of occupants?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	<b>Case 1:</b>				
	Method & Source of verification: _____				
	Annual GHI: \$ _____				
	L&M Limit: \$ _____				
	<b>Case 2:</b>				
	Method & Source of verification: _____				
	Annual GHI: \$ _____				
	L&M Limit: \$ _____				
	c. Can the occupant(s) be defined as a "displaced person"?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	d. Does the displacee(s) meet the length of occupancy (time) standards?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>3. CHECK THE WRITTEN NOTICES:</b>				
a. Was a "General Information Notice" containing all required information issued as soon as feasible with evidence of receipt in file?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. Did tenant receive a "Preliminary Displacement Notice"?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. Was a "Notice of Eligibility for "Relocation Assistance" issued at the time eligibility was established with evidence of receipt in file?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
d. Was a "Ninety-day Notice to Vacate" in file with evidence of receipt (if applicable)?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>4. CHECK REPLACEMENT HOUSING PAYMENT CLAIMS:</b>				
a. Type of Replacement Housing Payment: Case 1: _____ Case 2: _____				
b. If replacement housing assistance claim was paid, was the claim:				
1. Completed and signed?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Verified by supporting documentation? (i.e., old and new rent & utilities)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. Correctly calculated?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Filed within a reasonable period of time?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. Are periodic payments being made? Terms: _____	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. For eligible Section 104(d) cases: was claimant offered a choice of benefits?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. If any Replacement Housing Payment claims were not paid, is there documentation of the basis for denial?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>5. CHECK MOVING EXPENSE CLAIMS:</b>				
a. Was a moving expense paid?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. Was there a choice of fixed or actual expenses?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. Were actual moving expenses eligible?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
d. Was the actual claim verified with supporting documentation?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
e. Was the claim correctly calculated?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>6. CHECK RELOCATION ADVISORY ASSISTANCE:</b>				
a. Is there a Site Occupant Record on the displacee indicating Replacement Housing needs (i.e., handicapped facilities).	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. Is there a Selection of Most Representative Comparable Replacement Dwelling chart completed?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. Were the referred replacement units documented:				
1. "Decent, safe and sanitary"?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>	<u>N/A</u>
2. "Comparable"?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. Compliance with lead-based paint regulations?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
d. Has actual replacement dwelling been inspected with an acceptable checklist?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
e. If the relocatee moved into a substandard unit, was the required letter sent?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
f. Is there evidence of receipt of the above required letter?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**7. CHECK TEMPORARY RELOCATION DOCUMENTATION:**

If occupant(s) were temporarily relocated, did recipient:

a. Offer available facilities (i.e. dwelling units)?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. Document and pay eligible expenses?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. Receive a statement from the displacee that no eligible "out of pocket" expenses were incurred?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**8. CHECK LAST RESORT HOUSING DOCUMENTATION:**

		<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>
a. If "Last Resort" replacement housing was provided, is the decision adequately documented and justified? (Justification is based on the lack of availability and/or resources for "comparable replacement housing"; or the individual circumstances of the displacee?)	CASE 1:	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	CASE 2:	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. Check what method(s) were selected to provide "Last Resort" housing assistance:			

**CASE 1**

( )  
( )  
( )  
( )  
( )  
( )  
( )  
( )  
( )  
( )  
( )

**CASE 2**

( ) Replacement housing payment in excess of limits  
( ) Rehab or addition to existing unit  
( ) New construction  
( ) Direct Loan (\_\_\_\_%) (Type: \_\_\_\_\_)  
( ) Relocation and rehab of dwelling  
( ) Purchase of land/dwelling by Recipient and subsequent-sale or lease to displaced person  
( ) Removal of barriers to the handicapped  
( ) Cost effective conversion from tenant to homeowner  
( ) Modified methods (i.e., different unit space and physical characteristics)  
Describe: \_\_\_\_\_



- |  |          |                          |                          |
|--|----------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
|  |          | <u>YES</u>               | <u>NO</u>                |
| c. If applicable, do the specifications of the construction contract between the relocate and provider indicate the new unit to be “functionally similar” to the displaced unit? | CASE 1 : | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
|  | CASE 2:  | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



**PART III**  
**SITE INSPECTION I**

NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENT</u>	<u>N/A</u>
1. Was the unit the relocatee moved into:				
a. "Decent, safe and sanitary?"	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. "Functionally similar" in size and construction?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
If not, did the relocatee sign the required waiver?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Was the unit inspected by a DCA Program Representative?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
1. Was the relocatee interviewed by a DCA Program Representative?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Was the relocatee interviewed satisfied with the unit?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

COMMENTS: \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**PART III**  
**SITE INSPECTION II**

NAME: \_\_\_\_\_

	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENTS</u>	<u>N/A</u>
1. Was the unit the relocatee moved into:				
a. "Decent, safe and sanitary"?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. "Functionally similar" in size and construction?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
If not, did the relocatee sign the required waiver?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Was the unit inspected by a DCA Program Representative?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. Was the relocatee interviewed by a DCA Program Representative?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Was the relocatee interviewed satisfied with the unit?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

COMMENTS: \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_



## FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT REVIEW I & II

Recipient: \_\_\_\_\_

Review Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant # \_\_\_\_\_

Follow-up needed? Yes ☐ No ☐

Reviewed By: \_\_\_\_\_

	Comment		
	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Added</u> <u>N/A</u>
<b>Step 1: Check the Recipient's Accounting System:</b>			
• Are generally accepted accounting principles followed?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Are internal controls adequate to safeguard CDBG assets?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Are CDBG transactions supported by original source documents?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Will records be retained for a minimum of three years?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Are Quarterly Reports submitted on a timely basis?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is the information provided on the Quarterly Reports supported by accounting records?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Step 2: Check Drawdown of CDBG funds:</b>			
• Were drawdowns limited to the minimum amount of funds needed?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was the time between the receipt of the drawdown & the disbursement of funds as close as administratively feasible?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Step 3: Check Program Funds:</b>			
• Did the recipient return any interest earned on grant advances to the Department of Community Affairs?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If a local match was applicable, was it met?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If not, is it on schedule to be met prior to completion?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If a local leverage was applicable, was it met?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If not, is it on schedule to be met prior to completion?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was any Program Income generated?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If so, was it used before drawdown of CDBG funds?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were all eligible expenditures of Program Income used to fund eligible community development activities?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Step 4: Check for Allowable Expenditures:</b>			
• Were recipient expenditures "necessary & reasonable"?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were recipient expenditures allowable as specified in OMB Circular A-87?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were recipient expenditures eligible as defined by Title I, Section 105?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



- Did all salaried employees paid from grant funds either devote 100% of their time to the CDBG project, or maintain time distribution sheets, if part-time? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- Are engineering and/or architectural costs paid with CDBG funds within the allowable limits? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- Are the administration costs paid with CDBG funds within the allowable limits? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

**Step 5: Check for Compliance with Property Management Standards:**

- If personal property (furniture or equipment) was purchased with CDBG funds, are records available to identify it in accordance with 24 CFR Part 85, Property Management Standards? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

**Step 6: Check for Compliance with Procurement Procedures. Have Recipients followed procurement standards which ensure that:**

- Purchases are made on the basis of maximum open and free competition? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- Were applicable local procurement standards met for eligible small purchases under \$100,000? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- Were procurement standards followed equivalent to those specified in Part 85 or State Law? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

**Corrective Actions:**

---



---



---



---

**Follow-up Contacts:**

---



---



---



# **Individual Housing Analysis Financial Review - Rehab**

Reviewer: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Others Present: \_\_\_\_\_

Grantee: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant #: \_\_\_\_\_

Circle one: *Rehabilitation* *Reconstruction* *Repl. Housing* *Other:* \_\_\_\_\_

Map/Unit No. \_\_\_\_\_ of \_\_\_\_\_ cases. Contract status: (ongoing, complete, etc.) \_\_\_\_\_

Owner: \_\_\_\_\_ Address: \_\_\_\_\_

1. Estimated cost per CDBG application: \_\_\_\_\_ Actual Cost: \_\_\_\_\_
2. Did actual cost exceed 20% of estimated cost per application? \_\_\_\_\_
3. If yes, was prior DCA approval obtained? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Was a detailed work write-up and cost estimate prepared, prior to bid? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Were significant deviations (10%) from the cost estimate explained? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Did the homeowner provide private funds as specified in the local financial plan? \_\_\_\_\_
7. If applicable, did the recipient follow its procurement policy? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Did the homeowner authorize the contract, all amendments to the contract and payments to the contractor? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Did homeowner sign a "satisfaction" statement? \_\_\_\_\_
10. What sort of inspection was done by DCA Rep? Windshield ☐ Walk-Through ☐
11. Check write-up and specifications. Does the work and material appear to match specs? \_\_\_\_\_

12. If #11 is 'no' a walk-through should be performed. Does this inspection reveal deviations from the work order and amendments? \_\_\_\_\_
13. Does the contract amount equal payments to the contractor? \_\_\_\_\_ (use reverse to calculate)
14. Were progress payments based on work completed? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Was there adequate inspection? \_\_\_\_\_ Who Inspected? \_\_\_\_\_  
 Who Authorized payment? \_\_\_\_\_
15. Other observations: \_\_\_\_\_

Program Representatives will complete this form for each housing unit developed by the recipient and attach the work write-up. If possible a walk-through inspection should be made on each house. At close-out each inspection report accompanied by work specifications and any pertinent supporting data must be included in the main grant file.

<u>Check Number</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Amount</u>	<u>Payee</u>
_____	_____	\$ _____	_____
_____	_____	\$ _____	_____
_____	_____	\$ _____	_____
_____	_____	\$ _____	_____



# GEORGIA DEPARTMENT OF COMMUNITY AFFAIRS

## COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT BLOCK GRANT

### HOUSING REHAB/RECONSTRUCTION

### MONITORING REVIEW I

Recipient: \_\_\_\_\_ DCA Grant Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Review Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Reviewer: \_\_\_\_\_

- I. Program Status:
- a. Number of Rehabilitations Proposed \_\_\_\_\_ Completed \_\_\_\_\_
  - b. Number of Reconstructions Proposed \_\_\_\_\_ Completed \_\_\_\_\_
  - c. Number of Files Reviewed \_\_\_\_\_ Number of Site Inspections \_\_\_\_\_

II. Recipients' Program Policy Statement Date of Resolution: \_\_\_\_\_

Post Grant Award Public Hearing Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Does Program Policy Address:	Y	N	N/A	Comments
1. Program Goals and Objectives				
2. Applicant Eligibility Criteria				
3. Priority of Processing and Funding of Applications				
4. Financing Eligibility and Techniques				
5. Direct Loan Underwriting				
6. Definition of Income				
7. Temporary Relocation				
8. Minimum Property Standards Definition/Availability				
9. Rehab Feasibility Tests				
10. Contractor Qualifications, Requirements, Debarment				
11. Bidding Methods/Policies/Procedures				
12. Inspection and Testing for Lead Paint				
13. Program Revision Procedure				
14. Arbitration/Complaint Guidelines and Procedures				
15. Definition of Standard/Substandard Housing Units				
16. Residential Antidisplacement and Relocation Plan				
17. Provision for Historic Preservation				
18. Explanation of GPI Financing (General Property Improvements)				
19. Rehabilitation Advisor Job Description and Duties				

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

III. Standard Construction Contract Provisions:

Does Standard Construction Contract Address:	Y	N	N/A	Comments
1. Names of Parties to Contract				
2. Date of Contract				
3. Date of Commencement Notice and Procedure				
4. Performance Period				
5. Provision for Liquidated Damages				
6. Permit and License Procurement				
7. Insurance Requirements				
8. Conformance of Work to all Applicable Codes				
9. Lead Based Paint Prohibition				
10. Conflict of Interest				
11. Prohibition of Assignment of Contract				
12. Lien Waiver Provisions				
13. Contractor Guarantee of Work and Materials (1 Yr.)				
14. Payment Provisions and Schedules				
15. Subcontractor Regulations				
16. Provisions for Remedies				
17. Termination for Cause and Convenience Clause				
18. Equal Employment Opportunity Statement				
19. Materials Conform to Specification Provision				
20. General Contractor Supervision				
21. Protection of Resident Belongings				
22. Resident Relocation				
23. Contractor Use of Utilities Provision				
24. Procedure for Addition/Deletion of Work (change orders)				
25. Clean Up Provisions				
26. Allow Inspection by Local/State/Federal Officials				
27. Arbitration Procedure				
28. General or Residential Contractor License #				

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

W. Legal Review:

Have the Following Been Reviewed by Local Government Legal Counsel:	Y	N	N/A	Comments
1. Program Policies Statement				
2. Terms and Conditions of Rehabilitation Assistance				
3. Leverage Loan Agreements				
4. Lump Sum Drawdown Agreements				
5. Contractor and Sub-Contractor Agreements				
6. Construction Contract				
7. Rent Regulatory Agreement				
8. Promissory Note (or Legal Equivalent)				
9. Deed to Secure Debt				
10. Notice of Commencement				

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



**Monitoring Review of:** \_\_\_\_\_ **Grant No.** \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**V. Individual Case File Review:**

	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3
<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Street Address</b>			
<b>Location Map Number</b>			
<b>Occupancy (Owner/Renter)</b>			
<b>Type of Assistance</b> (Rehab/Reconstruct)			
<b>Completed Program App.</b>			
<b>Proof of Ownership (Method)</b>			
<b>Proof of Insurance</b>			
<b>Pre-1978 Unit?</b>			
<b>Provision of LBP warning pamphlet</b>			
<b>LBP Test results in File?</b> (if Positive complete pages 7& 8)			
<b>Annualized Gross Income</b>			
<b>Family Size</b>			
<b>Method of Determining Annual Income</b>			
<b>How was Income Documented</b>			
<b>Verification of Deposits</b>			
<b>"Before" and "After"</b> <b>Photos or Video Taken</b>			
<b>Rehab Advisor WWU Including Cost Estimate</b>			
<b>Quality of Work Write-Up</b>			
<b>Method of Bid Selected</b>			
<b>Bid Amount</b>			
<b>Within 20% of App. Budget</b> (If no - DCA Approval Date)			



**Monitoring Review of:**\_\_\_\_\_ **Grant No.**\_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**Case File Review Continued:**

	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3
<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Contractor Name</b>			
<b>Contractor License #</b>			
<b>Contract Signed by Owner and Contractor</b>			
<b>Contract Provisions:</b>			
<b>Contract Price</b>			
<b>Length in Days</b>			
<b>Progress Payments</b>			
<b>City/County not Party to     Contract</b>			
<b>Termination Clause</b>			
<b>Arbitration Clause</b>			
<b>Terms and Conditions of     Rehab</b>			
<b>Notice of Commencement     Signed and Dated</b>			
<b>Change Orders:</b>			
<b>Number</b>			
<b>Signed by all parties?</b>			
<b>Justified</b>			
<b>Cost Reasonable</b>			
<b>New Contract Total (Orig. Contract + Co's)</b>			
<b>Progress Payment     Inspection Forms</b>			
<b>Dated Final Inspection     Form</b>			



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**Case File Review Continued:**

**Case 1**

**Case 2**

**Case 3**

<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Contract Finished in Allotted Time</b>			
<b>If No: Signed Extension?</b>			
<b>Liquidated Damages Paid?</b>			
<b>Contractor release of Liens</b>			
<b>Payments made to contractor</b>			
<b>Totals Match?</b> (Payments and Contract Total)			
<b>Cert. of Final Payment</b>			
<b>Copies of Equipment and/or Materials Warranty(s) in File</b>			
<b>Termite Certification</b>			
<b>Insulation Certification</b>			
<b>Homeowner Satisfaction Statement (in file)</b>			
<b>Temporary Relocation Paid (if yes, list method)</b>			
<b>Evidence of Recorded Lien</b>			
<b>Date of DCA Inspection</b>			
<b>Homeowner/Client Comments</b>			

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

Case File Review Continued:

Complete this section for LEAD BASED PAINT HAZARD CONTROL

Case 1

Case 2

Case 3

Client Name			
Copy of LBP Risk Assessment/Inspection report			
Risk Assessor/Inspector (name and EPD cert. #)			
Evidence that report was received by owner			
LBP hazards detected? (if no stop here)			
Hazard Control method required			
Lead Contractor completing hazard control			
Contractor Qualification (Cert or SWP training)			
Contract Signed by Owner and Contractor			
Contract Provisions:			
Contract Price			
Length in Days			
Progress Payments			
City/County not Party to Contract			
Termination Clause			
Arbitration Clause			
Terms and Conditions of Rehab			
EPD Proceed Notices			



<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Notice of Commencement Signed and Dated</b>			
<b>Change Orders:</b>			
<b>Number</b>			
<b>Signed by all parties?</b>			
<b>Justified</b>			
<b>Cost Reasonable</b>			
<b>New Contract Total (Orig. Contract + Co's)</b>			
<b>Contractor release of Liens</b>			
<b>Payments made to contractor</b>			
<b>Totals Match? (Payments and Contract Total)</b>			
<b>Cert. of Final Payment</b>			
<b>Clearance examiner name (if different from Assessor/Inspector)</b>			
<b>Clearance Report copy in file</b>			
<b>Clearance standard met?</b>			
<b>Evidence that report was received by owner</b>			
<b>Temporary Relocation Paid?</b>			

Comments:

---



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**COMPLETE THIS SECTION FOR RECONSTRUCTION CASES ONLY**

	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3
<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Street Address</b>			
<b>Location Map Number</b>			
<b>Was Reconstruction for This Unit Proposed in Original Application</b>			
<b>DCA Approval for Recon.</b>			
<b>How was Ownership Documented</b>			
<b>Feasibility Test in File</b>			
<b>Cost Estimate for Reconstruction Less than comparable unit in community?</b>			
<b>Appraisal for Recon.</b>			
<b>Appraised Value Higher than Recon. Cost</b>			
<b>Same or More Number of Bedrooms in Recon.</b>			
<b>Living Area Same or More (Sq. Ft.)</b>			

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**COMPLETE THIS SECTION FOR ESCROW ACCOUNT PROGRAMS ONI**

Escrow Accounts:

Is there Evidence that the Bank Account:	Y	N	N/A	Comments
1. Is Identified as Recipients Rehab Escrow Account				
2. Is an Interest Bearing Account				If Yes-% Rate
3. Statement has been Reconciled each Month				
4. Has an Appropriate Ledger Established for this Account				
5. Has been Intermingled with other CDBG Monies				
6. Has been Limited only to Rehab Assistance				
7. Has Written Contract Authorizing Recipient to Escrow Rehab Funds				
8. At No Time had Deposits Exceeding 10 Calendar Days Cash Needs				
9. Accrued Interest has been Remitted to DCA Quarterly				
10. CDBG Deposits were made on or after Date of The Executed Construction Contract				

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



**GEORGIA DEPARTMENT OF COMMUNITY AFFAIRS  
COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT BLOCK GRANT  
HOUSING REHAB/RECONSTRUCTION  
MONITORING REVIEW II**

Recipient: \_\_\_\_\_ DCA Grant Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Review Date: \_\_\_\_\_ Reviewer: \_\_\_\_\_

**I. Program Status:**

a. Number of Rehabilitations Proposed \_\_\_\_\_ Completed \_\_\_\_\_

b. Number of Reconstructions Proposed \_\_\_\_\_ Completed \_\_\_\_\_

c. Number of Files Reviewed \_\_\_\_\_ Number of Site Inspections \_\_\_\_\_

**II. Changes in Recipients' Program Policy From Original Plan? Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_**

**If Yes, Explain:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

**III. Date of Rehab I Monitoring** \_\_\_\_\_

**IV. Problems or Follow Up Items to be Addressed During this Visit:** \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**V. Case File Review:**

Case 1

Case 2

Case 3

<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Street Address</b>			
<b>Location Map Number</b>			
<b>Occupancy (Owner/Renter)</b>			
<b>Type of Assistance</b> (Rehab/Reconstruct)			
<b>Completed Program App.</b>			
<b>Proof of Ownership (Method)</b>			
<b>Proof of Insurance</b>			
<b>Pre-1978 Unit?</b>			
<b>Provision of LBP warning pamphlet</b>			
<b>LBP Test results in File?</b> (if Positive complete pages 5&6)			
<b>Annualized Gross Income</b>			
<b>Family Size</b>			
<b>Method of Determining Annual Income</b>			
<b>How was Income Documented</b>			
<b>Verification of Deposits</b>			
<b>"Before" and "After" Photos or Video Taken</b>			
<b>Rehab Advisor WWU Including Cost Estimate</b>			
<b>Quality of Work Write-Up</b>			
<b>Method of Bid Selected</b>			
<b>Bid Amount</b>			
<b>Within 20% of App. Budget</b> (If no - DCA Approval Date)			



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

Case File Review Continued:

	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3
Client Name			
Contractor Name			
Contractor License #			
Contract Signed by Owner and Contractor			
Contract Provisions:			
Contract Price			
Length in Days			
Progress Payments			
City/County not Party to Contract			
Termination Clause			
Arbitration Clause			
Terms and Conditions of Rehab			
Notice of Commencement Signed and Dated			
Change Orders:			
Number			
Signed by all parties?			
Justified			
Cost Reasonable			
New Contract Total (Orig Contract + Co's)			
Progress Payment Inspection Forms			
ted Final Inspection Form			



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**Case File Review Continued:**

**Case 1**

**Case 2**

**Case 3**

<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Contract Finished in Allotted Time</b>			
<b>If No: Signed Extension?</b>			
<b>Liquidated Damages Paid?</b>			
<b>Contractor release of Liens</b>			
<b>Payments made to contractor</b>			
<b>Totals Match?</b> (Payments and Contract Total)			
<b>Cert. of Final Payment</b>			
<b>Copies of Equipment and/or Materials Warranty(s) in File</b>			
<b>Termite Certification</b>			
<b>Insulation Certification</b>			
<b>Homeowner Satisfaction Statement (in file)</b>			
<b>Temporary Relocation Paid (if yes, list method)</b>			
<b>Evidence of Recorded Lien</b>			
<b>Date of DCA Inspection</b>			
<b>Homeowner/Client Comments</b>			

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

Case File Review Continued:

Complete this section for LEAD BASED PAINT HAZARD CONTROL

Case 1

Case 2

Case 3

Client Name			
Copy of LBP Risk Assessment/Inspection report			
Risk Assessor/Inspector (name and EPD cert. #)			
Evidence that report was received by owner			
LBP hazards detected? (if no stop here)			
Lead Contractor completing hazard control			
Contractor Qualification (Cert or SWP training)			
Contract Signed by Owner and Contractor			
Contract Provisions:			
Contract Price			
Length in Days			
Progress Payments			
City/County not			
Party to Contract			
Termination Clause			
Arbitration Clause			
Terms and			
Conditions of Rehab			
EPD Proceed Notices			



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

## LEAD BASED PAINT HAZARD CONTROL Cont.

**Case 1**

**Case 2**

**Case 3**

<b>Client Name</b>			
<b>Notice of Commencement Signed and Dated</b>			
<b>Change Orders:</b>			
Number			
Signed by all parties?			
Justified			
Cost Reasonable			
<b>New Contract Total (Orig Contract + Co's)</b>			
<b>Contractor release of Liens</b>			
<b>Payments made to contractor</b>			
<b>Totals Match? (Payments and Contract Total)</b>			
<b>Cert. of Final Payment</b>			
<b>Clearance examiner name (if different from Assessor/Inspector)</b>			
<b>Clearance Report copy in file</b>			
<b>Clearance standard met?</b>			
<b>Evidence that report was received by owner</b>			
<b>Temporary Relocation Paid?</b>			



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**COMPLETE THIS SECTION FOR RECONSTRUCTION CASES ONLY**

	Case 1	Case 2	Case 3
Client Name			
Street Address			
Location Map Number			
Was Reconstruction for This Unit Proposed in Original Application			
DCA Approval for Reco.			
How was Ownership Documented			
Feasibility Test in File			
Cost Estimate for Reconstruction Less than comparable unit in community?			
Appraisal for Reco.			
Appraised Value Higher Than Reco. Cost			
Same or More Number of Bedrooms in Reco.			
Living Area Same or More (Sq. Ft.)			

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



Monitoring Review of: \_\_\_\_\_ Grant No. \_\_\_\_\_ (cont.)

**COMPLETE THIS SECTION FOR ESCROW ACCOUNT PROGRAMS ONI**

Escrow Accounts:

Is there Evidence that the Bank Account:	Y	N	N/A	Comments
1. Is Identified as Recipients Rehab Escrow Account				
2. Is an Interest Bearing Account				If Yes-% Rate
3. Statement has been Reconciled each Month				
4. Has an Appropriate Ledger Established for this Account				
5. Has been Intermingled with other CDBG Monies				
6. Has been Limited only to Rehab Assistance				
7. Has Written Contract Authorizing Recipient to Escrow Rehab Funds				
8. At No Time had Deposits Exceeding 10 Calendar Days Cash Needs				
9. Accrued Interest has been Remitted to DCA Quarterly				
10. CDBG Deposits were made on or after Date of The Executed Construction Contract				

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



**Individual Housing Analysis**  
**Financial Review - Buyer Assistance**

Reviewer: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Others Present: \_\_\_\_\_

Grantee: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant #: \_\_\_\_\_

Housing Type (Circle one): *Stick Built* *Modular* *MHU* *Other*: \_\_\_\_\_

Owner: \_\_\_\_\_ Address: \_\_\_\_\_

1. Appraised Value: \_\_\_\_\_ Actual Cost: \_\_\_\_\_

2. Was sale price equal to appraised value? \_\_\_\_\_

3. If no, explain \_\_\_\_\_

4. Did owner complete at least 8 hours of counseling by a HUD approve counseling agency? \_\_\_\_\_

5. How was course completion documented? \_\_\_\_\_

6. Was the home inspected by the local CDBG grantee? \_\_\_\_\_

7 Who Inspected? \_\_\_\_\_

8. Amount of CDBG funds provided: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

9. Amount of Primary Mortgage: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

10. Terms: Length (in years) \_\_\_\_\_ Interest Rate: \_\_\_\_\_ %

11. Mortgatge terms adhere to DCA policy? (Fixed rate, no baloon etc) Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_

If no, explain: \_\_\_\_\_

12. Was the unit sold to L/M eligible household? Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_. Income Doumented? Yes \_\_\_\_\_

13. Other observations: \_\_\_\_\_



## Procurement Review for Public Works Construction

Review is based on the Georgia Public Works Construction Law (O.C.G.A. 36-91-1)

Recipient: \_\_\_\_\_

Review Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant # \_\_\_\_\_

Follow-up needed?      Yes ☐      No ☐

Reviewed By: \_\_\_\_\_

	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>N/A</u>	<u>Comment</u> <u>Added</u>
1. Is Project exempt from Public Works Construction Procurement law? If yes: Project is exempt because: (check <u>one</u> as applicable)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
i. "Force Account labor" <sup>1</sup> was used, or	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
ii. Inmate labor was used?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. What advertising method was used? (check <u>all</u> as applicable)				
a. Legal Organ?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
i. Date of first advertisement: _____				
ii. Date of second advertisement: _____				
b. Internet website	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. Other	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
If yes, list: _____				
<hr/>				
3. Did local government post notice of contract opportunity properly?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Were all plans and specifications available for public review?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. What construction delivery method was used? (check <u>one</u> as applicable)				
a. Traditional (Design-Bid-Build)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. Design-Build	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. Construction Management	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
d. Other (describe): _____	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. Was DCA consulted if non-traditional method was used?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
7. Was the Recipient's attorney consulted if a non-traditional was used?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
8. What competitive process was used (check <u>one</u> as applicable)				
a. Competitive sealed bids	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
If yes, date of bid opening: _____				
Was bid opening held in public on specified date?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Number of days bids must remain open _____				
b. Competitive sealed proposals	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
If yes, date of proposal opening: _____				
Were proposals opened with no disclosure of competing offers?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Number of days proposals are valid: _____				
9. Was pre qualification of bidders used?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

<sup>1</sup> Force account is the term used to define labor performed by the recipient's personnel. Force account labor must be approved by DCA prior to incurring costs.



If yes:

- a. Have procedures for pre-qualification been followed? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- b. Has procedure been established for disqualified bidders? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

Procurement Review for Public Works Construction – Page 2

	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>N/A</u>	<u>Comment</u> <u>Added</u>
10. Was attendance at pre-bid conference mandatory?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
If yes:				
a. Was this requirement stated in advertisements for bid?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
11. If the value of the contract is over \$100,000:				
a. Was a Bid Bond received?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b. Performance Bond?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c. Payment Bond?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

All bond sureties must: 1) have current certificate of authority to transact business from the Georgia Insurance Commissioner, OR; 2) be on the US Dept. of Treasury's list of approved sureties; OR 3) local government must approve the form and solvency of the surety prior to execution of contract. If any do not apply, explain:

12. Was addendum to plans or specifications issued within 72 hours of bid or proposal opening? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- If yes, was bid/proposal opening extended at least 72 hours? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

. Number of bids received: \_\_\_\_\_

14. If only one bid received, was DCA approval granted prior to contract award? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

15. Did the local government negotiate with the bidder? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐

If yes, explain nature and result of negotiation:

16. Did construction contract include all required federal clauses? ☐ ☐ ☐ ☐
- (Attach Contract Review Matrix)

Additional Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



CDBG Grantee:	Grant Number:	Contract Amount:	Reviewer:	Date of Review:			
<input type="checkbox"/> Contractor/Subcontractor Affidavit <input type="checkbox"/> Section 3 Clause (see note) <input type="checkbox"/> Provision for Remedies							
(Compliance with OCGA 13-10-91) Applicable to All Contracts and Subcontracts							
All Contracts							
All Contracts							
	ARCHITECTURAL and ENGINEERING SERVICES	HOUSING REHAB		CONSTRUCTION CONTRACTS			
		<input type="checkbox"/> Less than 8 Units	<input type="checkbox"/> 8 or More Units	<input type="checkbox"/> Over \$100,000	<input type="checkbox"/> Over \$40,000	<input type="checkbox"/> Over \$10,000	<input type="checkbox"/> Over \$2,000
<input type="checkbox"/> Provision for Termination	If Over \$10,000	If Over \$10,000	If Over \$10,000	•	•	•	
<u>Executive Orders 11246/11375</u>							
<input type="checkbox"/> EEO Clause	If Over \$10,000	If Over \$10,000	If Over \$10,000	•	•	•	
<input type="checkbox"/> EEO Specifications				•	•	•	
<input type="checkbox"/> Affirmative Action Clause				•	•	•	
<input type="checkbox"/> Non-Segregated Facilities				•	•	•	
<u>Federal Labor Standards</u>							
<input type="checkbox"/> Copeland Anti-Kickback			•	•	•	•	•
<input type="checkbox"/> Davis-Bacon Clause			•	•	•	•	•
<input type="checkbox"/> Wage Rate from DCA			•	•	•	•	•
<input type="checkbox"/> Work Hours & Safety			If Over \$100,000	•			
<input type="checkbox"/> Performance & Payment Bonds				•	•		
<input type="checkbox"/> 5% Bid Bond				•			
<input type="checkbox"/> Clean Air/Water Clause				•			
<input type="checkbox"/> Provision for Disability Accessibility (if a building)	•						
<input type="checkbox"/> Provision for Ga. Energy Code (if a building)	•						

Note that the Section 3 Clause is not required in “private” housing rehabilitation contracts when the local government is not a party to the contract.



# Cash Match Verification/Leverage Assessment

Recipient: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant No: \_\_\_\_\_

Match Amount Required: \_\_\_\_\_

Match Amount Verified: \_\_\_\_\_

Leverage Required: \_\_\_\_\_

Leverage Contributed to Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Date Match/Leverage Reviewed: \_\_\_\_\_

How Verified/Assessed: \_\_\_\_\_

Recommendation for Final Draw:                      Yes                      No

Assessment of Status of Leverage: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Program Representative

Route to: (1) Grants Consultant; (2) Grant file

Instructions: This form is to be prepared prior to a grantee's final draw request. It is to be used to **verify** the required cash match and to **assess** the status of committed leverage funds. Leverage can be assessed by reviewing leverage funds contributed to date and estimating leverage funds to be contributed based on contracts, project schedules, and type of grantee in-kind contributions. Final **verification** of leverage must be done at the closeout site visit. Under "Assessment of Status of Leverage" above, please indicate whether meeting anticipated leverage requirements is expected to be an issue for the grantee.



## CLOSE-OUT REVIEW

Recipient: \_\_\_\_\_

Grant # \_\_\_\_\_ Review Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Reviewed By: \_\_\_\_\_ Follow-up needed? Yes ☐ No ☐

	Comment			
	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Added</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b><u>Step 1: Check Allowable Expenditures</u></b>				
• Were Engineering costs paid for with CDBG funds within 12% of CDBG's portion of the construction costs? OR for Architectural projects, were fees within 10% of CDBG's portion of construction costs?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were administrative costs paid for with CDBG funds within the allowable limits?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were costs incurred "eligible, reasonable and appropriate?"	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did the project meet a National Objective? (low/mod benefit threshold) (Elimination of Slum and Blight-RD projects)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were recipient expenditures 'necessary & reasonable'?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were recipient expenditures allowable as specified in OMB Circular A-87?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were recipient expenditures eligible as defined by Title I, Section 105?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did all salaried employees paid from grant funds either devote 100% of their time to the CDBG project, or maintain time distribution sheets, if part-time?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b><u>Step 2: Check Recipient's Financial Management</u></b>				
• Have all CDBG funds remaining in the checking account been returned to DCA? (if applicable)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Will records be retained for a minimum of three years?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were drawdowns limited to the minimum amount of funds needed?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was the time between the receipt of the drawdown & the disbursement of funds as close as administratively feasible?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Did the recipient return any interest earned on grant advances to the Department of Community Affairs?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b><u>Step 3: Check Program Income:</u></b>				
• Was any Program Income generated?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If so, was it used before drawdown of CDBG funds?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Were all eligible expenditures of Program Income used to fund eligible community development activities?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



	Comment			
	<u>Yes</u>	<u>No</u>	<u>Added</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Step 5: Check for Compliance with Property Management Standards:</b>				
• If personal property (furniture or equipment) was purchased with CDBG funds, are records available to identify it in accordance with 24 CFR Part 85, Property Management Standards?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Step 6: Check Recipient's Close-Out Procedures</b>				
• Has the final Quarterly Report been submitted?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Has Actual Accomplishments form been completed; & do the numbers agree with final report?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is supporting documentation available?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Has documentation been reviewed by rep?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is data acceptable?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Is Actual beneficiary data substantially the same as the proposed number?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Have any civil rights complaints been filed Against the local gov't since the grant award? (If so, attach explanation)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Does the close-out information reconcile with the Recipient's records?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Has the final public hearing been held?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If a building project, has a site visit been made to insure that clients are using it?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If a local match was applicable, was it met? (CD Project)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was leverage provided? (CD Projects)	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• For projects beginning with FY 2005 awards, indicate the amount of leverage provided as verified by invoices and cancelled checks or other documentation. Use the grant award package as a guide for monitoring.				
• Has a 'Final Wage Compliance Report' been submitted?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• If an Economic Development project, has sufficient information been provided to substantiate low/mod job creation?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Has company letter documenting their investment been submitted?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
• Was the goal met?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Number of jobs proposed _____				
Number of jobs created _____				

Comments: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Program Representative Signature \_\_\_\_\_



**AUDIT REVIEW**  
Interim ( )      Final ( )

RECIPIENT \_\_\_\_\_

GRANT# \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEW DATE: \_\_\_\_\_

REVIEWED BY \_\_\_\_\_

Follow up needed?    Yes      No

	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>COMMENT ADDED</u>	<u>N/A</u>
<b>Step A: Check audit procedures:</b>				
1. Was the audit conducted by a C.P.A. firm?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Was the audit conducted in accordance with OMB Circular A-133?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. Does the Audit Report include:				
a) schedule of federal assistance?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
b) unqualified statement on compliance?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
c) unqualified statement on internal control?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Was a source and application of funds schedule included?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. Was a project cost schedule (by activity) included?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. Date audit was issued _____				
7. Date audit was received _____				
<b>Step B: Check audit results:</b>				
1. Was audit free of findings?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. If findings were identified, did recipient submit documentation that corrective action has been taken?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
3. Did recipient comply with draw down regulations?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
4. Did recipient comply with State/Federal laws and regulations?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
5. Were direct costs charged to the program reasonable and necessary?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
6. Was program income spent appropriately?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



Step C:	<u>YES</u>	<u>NO</u>	<u>Comment Added</u>	<u>N/A</u>
1. Did auditor cover the expenditure of all grant funds? If not, enter date when next audit is due:_____	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
2. Did the audit include Economic Development Revolving Loan Funds, if applicable?	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

**COMMENTS:**

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---







**Item: II**  
**24 CFR Part 85**  
**(HUD Common Rule,**  
**Administrative Requirements**  
**for Grants...)**







## Title 24: Housing and Urban Development

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

### **PART 85—ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS FOR GRANTS AND COOPERATIVE AGREEMENTS TO STATE, LOCAL AND FEDERALLY RECOGNIZED INDIAN TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS**

#### **Section Contents**

##### **Subpart A—General**

- [§ 85.1 Purpose and scope of this part.](#)
- [§ 85.2 Scope of subpart.](#)
- [§ 85.3 Definitions.](#)
- [§ 85.4 Applicability.](#)
- [§ 85.5 Effect on other issuances.](#)
- [§ 85.6 Additions and exceptions.](#)

##### **Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements**

- [§ 85.10 Forms for applying for grants.](#)
- [§ 85.11 State plans.](#)
- [§ 85.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for “high-risk” grantees.](#)

##### **Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements**

##### **Financial Administration**

- [§ 85.20 Standards for financial management systems.](#)
- [§ 85.21 Payment.](#)
- [§ 85.22 Allowable costs.](#)
- [§ 85.23 Period of availability of funds.](#)
- [§ 85.24 Matching or cost sharing.](#)
- [§ 85.25 Program income.](#)
- [§ 85.26 Non-Federal audit.](#)

##### **Changes, Property, and Subawards**

- [§ 85.30 Changes.](#)
- [§ 85.31 Real property.](#)
- [§ 85.32 Equipment.](#)
- [§ 85.33 Supplies.](#)
- [§ 85.34 Copyrights.](#)
- [§ 85.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.](#)
- [§ 85.36 Procurement.](#)
- [§ 85.37 Subgrants.](#)

##### **Reports, Records, Retention, and Enforcement**

- [§ 85.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.](#)
- [§ 85.41 Financial reporting.](#)
- [§ 85.42 Retention and access requirements for records.](#)



§ 85.43 Enforcement.

§ 85.44 Termination for convenience.

#### **Subpart D—After-the-Grant Requirements**

§ 85.50 Closeout.

§ 85.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.

§ 85.52 Collection of amounts due.

#### **Subpart E—Entitlement [Reserved]**

**Authority:** 42 U.S.C. 3535(d).

**Source:** 53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, unless otherwise noted.

#### **Subpart A—General**

 [top](#)

#### **§ 85.1 Purpose and scope of this part.**

 [top](#)

This part establishes uniform administrative rules for Federal grants and cooperative agreements and subawards to State, local and Indian tribal governments.

#### **§ 85.2 Scope of subpart.**

 [top](#)

This subpart contains general rules pertaining to this part and procedures for control of exceptions from this part.

#### **§ 85.3 Definitions.**

 [top](#)

As used in this part:

*Accrued expenditures* mean the charges incurred by the grantee during a given period requiring the provision of funds for: (1) Goods and other tangible property received; (2) services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees; and (3) other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance is required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

*Accrued income* means the sum of: (1) Earnings during a given period from services performed by the grantee and goods and other tangible property delivered to purchasers, and (2) amounts becoming owed to the grantee for which no current services or performance is required by the grantee.



*Acquisition cost* of an item of purchased equipment means the net invoice unit price of the property including the cost of modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make the property usable for the purpose for which it was acquired. Other charges such as the cost of installation, transportation, taxes, duty or protective in-transit insurance, shall be included or excluded from the unit acquisition cost in accordance with the grantee's regular accounting practices.

*Administrative* requirements mean those matters common to grants in general, such as financial management, kinds and frequency of reports, and retention of records. These are distinguished from *programmatic* requirements, which concern matters that can be treated only on a program-by-program or grant-by-grant basis, such as kinds of activities that can be supported by grants under a particular program.

*Awarding agency* means (1) with respect to a grant, the Federal agency, and (2) with respect to a subgrant, the party that awarded the subgrant.

*Cash contributions* means the grantee's cash outlay, including the outlay of money contributed to the grantee or subgrantee by other public agencies and institutions, and private organizations and individuals. When authorized by Federal legislation, Federal funds received from other assistance agreements may be considered as grantee or subgrantee cash contributions.

*Contract* means (except as used in the definitions for *grant* and *subgrant* in this section and except where qualified by *Federal*) a procurement contract under a grant or subgrant, and means a procurement subcontract under a contract.

*Cost sharing or matching* means the value of the third party in-kind contributions and the portion of the costs of a federally assisted project or program not borne by the Federal Government.

*Cost-type contract* means a contract or subcontract under a grant in which the contractor or subcontractor is paid on the basis of the costs it incurs, with or without a fee.

*Equipment* means tangible, nonexpendable, personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost of \$5,000 or more per unit. A grantee may use its own definition of equipment provided that such definition would at least include all equipment defined above.

*Expenditure report* means the Federal financial report (FFR) or such other financial reporting form as may be approved by the Office of Management and Budget.

*Federally recognized Indian tribal government* means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any Native village as defined in section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided by him through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

*Government* means a State or local government or a federally recognized Indian tribal government.

*Grant* means an award of financial assistance, including cooperative agreements, in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, by the Federal Government to an eligible grantee. The term does not include technical assistance which provides services instead of money, or other assistance in the form of revenue sharing, loans, loan guarantees, interest subsidies, insurance, or direct appropriations. Also, the term does not include assistance, such as a fellowship or other lump sum award, which the grantee is not required to account for.

*Grantee* means the government to which a grant is awarded and which is accountable for the use of the funds provided. The grantee is the entire legal entity even if only a particular component of the entity is designated in the grant award document.

*Local government* means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority (including any public and Indian housing agency under the United States Housing Act of 1937) school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a nonprofit corporation



under state law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

*Obligations* means the amounts of orders placed, contracts and subgrants awarded, goods and services received, and similar transactions during a given period that will require payment by the grantee during the same or a future period.

*OMB* means the United States Office of Management and Budget.

*Outlays* (expenditures) mean charges made to the project or program. They may be reported on a cash or accrual basis. For reports prepared on a cash basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursement for direct charges for goods and services, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the amount of cash advances and payments made to contractors and subgrantees. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, outlays are the sum of actual cash disbursements, the amount of indirect expense incurred, the value of in-kind contributions applied, and the new increase (or decrease) in the amounts owed by the grantee for goods and other property received, for services performed by employees, contractors, subgrantees, subcontractors, and other payees, and other amounts becoming owed under programs for which no current services or performance are required, such as annuities, insurance claims, and other benefit payments.

*Percentage of completion method* refers to a system under which payments are made for construction work according to the percentage of completion of the work, rather than to the grantee's cost incurred.

*Prior approval* means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring specific cost.

*Real property* means land, including land improvements, structures and appurtenances thereto, excluding movable machinery and equipment.

*Share*, when referring to the awarding agency's portion of real property, equipment or supplies, means the same percentage as the awarding agency's portion of the acquiring party's total costs under the grant to which the acquisition costs under the grant to which the acquisition cost of the property was charged. Only costs are to be counted—not the value of third-party in-kind contributions.

*State* means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments. The term does not include any public and Indian housing agency under United States Housing Act of 1937.

*Subgrant* means an award of financial assistance in the form of money, or property in lieu of money, made under a grant by a grantee to an eligible subgrantee. The term includes financial assistance when provided by contractual legal agreement, but does not include procurement purchases, nor does it include any form of assistance which is excluded from the definition of *grant* in this part.

*Subgrantee* means the government or other legal entity to which a subgrant is awarded and which is accountable to the grantee for the use of the funds provided.

*Supplies* means all tangible personal property other than *equipment* as defined in this part.

*Suspension* means, depending on the context, either temporary withdrawal of the authority to obligate grant funds pending corrective action by the grantee or subgrantee or a decision to terminate the grant, or an action taken by a suspending official in accordance with 2 CFR part 2424, to immediately exclude a person from participating in grant transactions for a period, pending completion of an investigation and such legal or debarment proceedings as may ensue.

*Termination* means permanent withdrawal of the authority to obligate previously-awarded grant funds before that authority would otherwise expire. It also means the voluntary relinquishment of that authority by the grantee or subgrantee. *Termination* does not include: (1) Withdrawal of funds awarded on the basis of the grantee's underestimate of the unobligated balance in a prior period; (2) Withdrawal of the unobligated



balance as of the expiration of a grant; (3) Refusal to extend a grant or award additional funds, to make a competing or noncompeting continuation, renewal, extension, or supplemental award; or (4) voiding of a grant upon determination that the award was obtained fraudulently, or was otherwise illegal or invalid from inception.

*Terms of a grant or subgrant* mean all requirements of the grant or subgrant, whether in statute, regulations, or the award document.

*Third party in-kind contributions* mean property or services which benefit a federally assisted project or program and which are contributed by non-Federal third parties without charge to the grantee, or a cost-type contractor under the grant agreement.

*Unliquidated obligations* for reports prepared on a cash basis mean the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee that has not been paid. For reports prepared on an accrued expenditure basis, they represent the amount of obligations incurred by the grantee for which an outlay has not been recorded.

*Unobligated balance* means the portion of the funds authorized by the Federal agency that has not been obligated by the grantee and is determined by deducting the cumulative obligations from the cumulative funds authorized.

[53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 72 FR 73493, Dec. 27, 2007; 75 FR 41090, July 15, 2010]

#### **§ 85.4 Applicability.**

[↑ top](#)

(a) *General.* Subparts A—D of this part apply to all grants and subgrants to governments, except where inconsistent with Federal statutes or with regulations authorized in accordance with the exception provision of §85.6, or:

(1) Grants and subgrants to State and local institutions of higher education or State and local hospitals.

(2) The block grants authorized by the Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1981 (Community Services; Preventive Health and Health Services; Alcohol, Drug Abuse, and Mental Health Services; Maternal and Child Health Services; Social Services; Low-Income Home Energy Assistance; States' Program of Community Development Block Grants for Small Cities; and Elementary and Secondary Education other than programs administered by the Secretary of Education under title V, subtitle D, chapter 2, section 583—the Secretary's discretionary grant program) and titles I-III of the Job Training Partnership Act of 1982 and under the Public Health Services Act (section 1921), Alcohol and Drug Abuse Treatment and Rehabilitation Block Grant and part C of title V, Mental Health Service for the Homeless Block Grant).

(3) Entitlement grants to carry out the following programs of the Social Security Act:

(i) Aid to Needy Families with Dependent Children (title IV-A of the Act, not including the Work Incentive Program (WIN) authorized by section 402(a)(19)(G); HHS grants for WIN are subject to this part);

(ii) Child Support Enforcement and Establishment of Paternity (title IV-D of the Act);

(iii) Foster Care and Adoption Assistance (title IV-E of the Act);

(iv) Aid to the Aged, Blind, and Disabled (titles I, X, XIV, and XVI-AABD of the Act); and

(v) Medical Assistance (Medicaid) (title XIX of the Act) not including the State Medicaid Fraud Control program authorized by section 1903(a)(6)(B).



(4) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The National School Lunch Act:

- (i) School Lunch (section 4 of the Act),
- (ii) Commodity Assistance (section 6 of the Act),
- (iii) Special Meal Assistance (section 11 of the Act),
- (iv) Summer Food Service for Children (section 13 of the Act), and
- (v) Child Care Food Program (section 17 of the Act).

(5) Entitlement grants under the following programs of The Child Nutrition Act of 1966:

- (i) Special Milk (section 3 of the Act), and
- (ii) School Breakfast (section 4 of the Act).

(6) Entitlement grants for State Administrative expenses under The Food Stamp Act of 1977 (section 16 of the Act).

(7) A grant for an experimental, pilot, or demonstration project that is also supported by a grant listed in paragraph (a)(3) of this section;

(8) Grant funds awarded under subsection 412(e) of the Immigration and Nationality Act (8 U.S.C. 1522(e)) and subsection 501(a) of the Refugee Education Assistance Act of 1980 (Pub. L. 96-422, 94 Stat. 1809), for cash assistance, medical assistance, and supplemental security income benefits to refugees and entrants and the administrative costs of providing the assistance and benefits;

(9) Grants to local education agencies under 20 U.S.C. 236 through 241-1(a), and 242 through 244 (portions of the Impact Aid program), except for 20 U.S.C. 238(d)(2)(c) and 240(f) (Entitlement Increase for Handicapped Children); and

(10) Payments under the Veterans Administration's State Home Per Diem Program (38 U.S.C. 641(a)).

(b) *Entitlement programs.* Entitlement programs enumerated above in §85.4(a) (3) through (8) are subject to subpart E.

#### **§ 85.5 Effect on other issuances.**

 [top](#)

All other grants administration provisions of codified program regulations, program manuals, handbooks and other nonregulatory materials which are inconsistent with this part are superseded, except to the extent they are required by statute, or authorized in accordance with the exception provision in §85.6.

#### **§ 85.6 Additions and exceptions.**

 [top](#)

(a) For classes of grants and grantees subject to this part, Federal agencies may not impose additional administrative requirements except in codified regulations published in the Federal Register.

(b) Exceptions for classes of grants or grantees may be authorized only by OMB.



(c) Exceptions on a case-by-case basis and for subgrantees may be authorized by the affected Federal agencies.

## Subpart B—Pre-Award Requirements

[↑ top](#)

### § 85.10 Forms for applying for grants.

[↑ top](#)

(a) *Scope.* (1) This section prescribes forms and instructions to be used by governmental organizations (except hospitals and institutions of higher education operated by a government) in applying for grants. This section is not applicable, however, to formula grant programs which do not require applicants to apply for funds on a project basis.

(2) This section applies only to applications to Federal agencies for grants, and is not required to be applied by grantees in dealing with applicants for subgrants. However, grantees are encouraged to avoid more detailed or burdensome application requirements for subgrants.

(b) *Authorized forms and instructions for governmental organizations.* (1) In applying for grants, applicants shall only use standard application forms or those prescribed by the granting agency with the approval of OMB under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980.

(2) Applicants are not required to submit more than the original and two copies of preapplications or applications.

(3) Applicants must follow all applicable instructions that bear OMB clearance numbers. Federal agencies may specify and describe the programs, functions, or activities that will be used to plan, budget, and evaluate the work under a grant. Other supplementary instructions may be issued only with the approval of OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980. For any standard form, except the SF-424 facesheet, Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the applicant to disregard any line item that is not needed.

(4) When a grantee applies for additional funding (such as a continuation or supplemental award) or amends a previously submitted application, only the affected pages need be submitted. Previously submitted pages with information that is still current need not be resubmitted.

### § 85.11 State plans.

[↑ top](#)

(a) *Scope.* The statutes for some programs require States to submit plans before receiving grants. Under regulations implementing Executive Order 12372, "Intergovernmental Review of Federal Programs," States are allowed to simplify, consolidate and substitute plans. This section contains additional provisions for plans that are subject to regulations implementing the Executive order.

(b) *Requirements.* A State need meet only Federal administrative or programmatic requirements for a plan that are in statutes or codified regulations.

(c) *Assurances.* In each plan the State will include an assurance that the State shall comply with all applicable Federal statutes and regulations in effect with respect to the periods for which it receives grant funding. For this assurance and other assurances required in the plan, the State may:



(1) Cite by number the statutory or regulatory provisions requiring the assurances and affirm that it gives the assurances required by those provisions,

(2) Repeat the assurance language in the statutes or regulations, or

(3) Develop its own language to the extent permitted by law.

(d) *Amendments*. A State will amend a plan whenever necessary to reflect:

(1) New or revised Federal statutes or regulations or;

(2) A material change in any State law, organization, policy, or State agency operation. The State will obtain approval for the amendment and its effective date but need submit for approval only the amended portions of the plan.

### **§ 85.12 Special grant or subgrant conditions for “high-risk” grantees.**

[!\[\]\(003082e50e3009141f59bd5df831749f\_img.jpg\) top](#)

(a) A grantee or subgrantee may be considered *high risk* if an awarding agency determines that a grantee or subgrantee:

(1) Has a history of unsatisfactory performance, or

(2) Is not financially stable, or

(3) Has a management system which does not meet the management standards set forth in this part, or

(4) Has not conformed to terms and conditions of previous awards, or

(5) Is otherwise not responsible; and if the awarding agency determines that an award will be made, special conditions and/or restrictions shall correspond to the high risk condition and shall be included in the award.

(b) Special conditions or restrictions may include:

(1) Payment on a reimbursement basis;

(2) Withholding authority to proceed to the next phase until receipt of evidence of acceptable performance within a given funding period;

(3) Requiring additional, more detailed financial reports;

(4) Additional project monitoring;

(5) Requiring the grantee or subgrantee to obtain technical or management assistance; or

(6) Establishing additional prior approvals.

(c) If an awarding agency decides to impose such conditions, the awarding official will notify the grantee or subgrantee as early as possible, in writing, of:

(1) The nature of the special conditions/restrictions;

(2) The reason(s) for imposing them;



(3) The corrective actions which must be taken before they will be removed and the time allowed for completing the corrective actions and

(4) The method of requesting reconsideration of the conditions/restrictions imposed.

## Subpart C—Post-Award Requirements

[↑ top](#)

## Financial Administration

[↑ top](#)

### § 85.20 Standards for financial management systems.

[↑ top](#)

(a) A State must expend and account for grant funds in accordance with State laws and procedures for expending and accounting for its own funds. Fiscal control and accounting procedures of the State, as well as its subgrantees and cost-type contractors, must be sufficient to—

(1) Permit preparation of reports required by this part and the statutes authorizing the grant, and

(2) Permit the tracing of funds to a level of expenditures adequate to establish that such funds have not been used in violation of the restrictions and prohibitions of applicable statutes.

(b) The financial management systems of other grantees and subgrantees must meet the following standards:

(1) *Financial reporting.* Accurate, current, and complete disclosure of the financial results of financially assisted activities must be made in accordance with the financial reporting requirements of the grant or subgrant.

(2) *Accounting records.* Grantees and subgrantees must maintain records which adequately identify the source and application of funds provided for financially-assisted activities. These records must contain information pertaining to grant or subgrant awards and authorizations, obligations, unobligated balances, assets, liabilities, outlays or expenditures, and income.

(3) *Internal control.* Effective control and accountability must be maintained for all grant and subgrant cash, real and personal property, and other assets. Grantees and subgrantees must adequately safeguard all such property and must assure that it is used solely for authorized purposes.

(4) *Budget control.* Actual expenditures or outlays must be compared with budgeted amounts for each grant or subgrant. Financial information must be related to performance or productivity data, including the development of unit cost information whenever appropriate or specifically required in the grant or subgrant agreement. If unit cost data are required, estimates based on available documentation will be accepted whenever possible.

(5) *Allowable cost.* Applicable OMB cost principles, agency program regulations, and the terms of grant and subgrant agreements will be followed in determining the reasonableness, allowability, and allocability of costs.

(6) *Source documentation.* Accounting records must be supported by such source documentation as cancelled checks, paid bills, payrolls, time and attendance records, contract and subgrant award documents, etc.



(7) *Cash management.* Procedures for minimizing the time elapsing between the transfer of funds from the U.S. Treasury and disbursement by grantees and subgrantees must be followed whenever advance payment procedures are used. Grantees must establish reasonable procedures to ensure the receipt of reports on subgrantees' cash balances and cash disbursements in sufficient time to enable them to prepare complete and accurate cash transactions reports to the awarding agency. When advances are made by letter-of-credit or electronic transfer of funds methods, the grantee must make drawdowns as close as possible to the time of making disbursements. Grantees must monitor cash drawdowns by their subgrantees to assure that they conform substantially to the same standards of timing and amount as apply to advances to the grantees.

(c) An awarding agency may review the adequacy of the financial management system of any applicant for financial assistance as part of a preaward review or at any time subsequent to award.

## **§ 85.21 Payment.**

 [top](#)

(a) *Scope.* This section prescribes the basic standard and the methods under which a Federal agency will make payments to grantees, and grantees will make payments to subgrantees and contractors.

(b) *Basic standard.* Methods and procedures for payment shall minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of funds and disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee, in accordance with Treasury regulations at 31 CFR part 205.

(c) *Advances.* Grantees and subgrantees shall be paid in advance, provided they maintain or demonstrate the willingness and ability to maintain procedures to minimize the time elapsing between the transfer of the funds and their disbursement by the grantee or subgrantee.

(d) *Reimbursement.* Reimbursement shall be the preferred method when the requirements in paragraph (c) of this section are not met. Grantees and subgrantees may also be paid by reimbursement for any construction grant. Except as otherwise specified in regulation, Federal agencies shall not use the percentage of completion method to pay construction grants. The grantee or subgrantee may use that method to pay its construction contractor, and if it does, the awarding agency's payments to the grantee or subgrantee will be based on the grantee's or subgrantee's actual rate of disbursement.

(e) *Working capital advances.* If a grantee cannot meet the criteria for advance payments described in paragraph (c) of this section, and the Federal agency has determined that reimbursement is not feasible because the grantee lacks sufficient working capital, the awarding agency may provide cash or a working capital advance basis. Under this procedure the awarding agency shall advance cash to the grantee to cover its estimated disbursement needs for an initial period generally geared to the grantee's disbursing cycle. Thereafter, the awarding agency shall reimburse the grantee for its actual cash disbursements. The working capital advance method of payment shall not be used by grantees or subgrantees if the reason for using such method is the unwillingness or inability of the grantee to provide timely advances to the subgrantee to meet the subgrantee's actual cash disbursements.

(f) *Effect of program income, refunds, and audit recoveries on payment.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees shall disburse repayments to and interest earned on a revolving fund before requesting additional cash payments for the same activity.

(2) Except as provided in paragraph (f)(1) of this section, grantees and subgrantees shall disburse program income, rebates, refunds, contract settlements, audit recoveries and interest earned on such funds before requesting additional cash payments.

(g) *Withholding payments.* (1) Unless otherwise required by Federal statute, awarding agencies shall not withhold payments for proper charges incurred by grantees or subgrantees unless—

(i) The grantee or subgrantee has failed to comply with grant award conditions or



(ii) The grantee or subgrantee is indebted to the United States.

(2) Cash withheld for failure to comply with grant award condition, but without suspension of the grant, shall be released to the grantee upon subsequent compliance. When a grant is suspended, payment adjustments will be made in accordance with §85.43(c).

(3) A Federal agency shall not make payment to grantees for amounts that are withheld by grantees or subgrantees from payment to contractors to assure satisfactory completion of work. Payments shall be made by the Federal agency when the grantees or subgrantees actually disburse the withheld funds to the contractors or to escrow accounts established to assure satisfactory completion of work.

(h) *Cash depositories.* (1) Consistent with the national goal of expanding the opportunities for minority business enterprises, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use minority banks (a bank which is owned at least 50 percent by minority group members). A list of minority owned banks can be obtained from the Minority Business Development Agency, Department of Commerce, Washington, DC 20230.

(2) A grantee or subgrantee shall maintain a separate bank account only when required by Federal-State agreement.

(i) *Interest earned on advances.* Except for interest earned on advances of funds exempt under the Intergovernmental Cooperation Act (31 U.S.C. 6501 *et seq.*) and the Indian Self-Determination Act (23 U.S.C. 450), grantees and subgrantees shall promptly, but at least quarterly, remit interest earned on advances to the Federal agency. The grantee or subgrantee may keep interest amounts up to \$100 per year for administrative expenses.

## § 85.22 Allowable costs.

[↑ top](#)

(a) *Limitation on use of funds.* Grant funds may be used only for:

(1) The allowable costs of the grantees, subgrantees and cost-type contractors, including allowable costs in the form of payments to fixed-price contractors; and

(2) Reasonable fees or profit to cost-type contractors but not any fee or profit (or other increment above allowable costs) to the grantee or subgrantee.

(b) *Applicable cost principles.* For each kind of organization, there is a set of Federal principles for determining allowable costs. Allowable costs will be determined in accordance with the cost principles applicable to the organization incurring the costs. The following chart lists the kinds of organizations and the applicable cost principles.

For the costs of a—	Use the principles in—
State, local or Indian tribal government	OMB Circular A-87.
Private nonprofit organization other than an (1) institution of higher education, (2) hospital, or (3) organization named in OMB Circular A-122 as not subject to that circular	OMB Circular A-122.
Educational institutions.	OMB Circular A-21.
For-profit organization other than a hospital and an organization named in OMB Circular	48 CFR part 31. Contract Cost Principles and Procedures, or uniform cost



A-122 as not subject to that circular	accounting standards that comply with cost principles acceptable to the Federal agency.
---------------------------------------	---

#### **§ 85.23 Period of availability of funds.**

[↑ top](#)

(a) *General.* Where a funding period is specified, a grantee may charge to the award only costs resulting from obligations of the funding period unless carryover of unobligated balances is permitted, in which case the carryover balances may be charged for costs resulting from obligations of the subsequent funding period.

(b) *Liquidation of obligations.* A grantee must liquidate all obligations incurred under the award not later than 90 days after the end of the funding period (or as specified in a program regulation) to coincide with the submission of the FFR. HUD may extend this deadline at the request of the grantee.

[53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 75 FR 41090, July 15, 2010]

#### **§ 85.24 Matching or cost sharing.**

[↑ top](#)

(a) *Basic rule: Costs and contributions acceptable.* With the qualifications and exceptions listed in paragraph (b) of this section, a matching or cost sharing requirement may be satisfied by either or both of the following:

(1) Allowable costs incurred by the grantee, subgrantee or a cost-type contractor under the assistance agreement. This includes allowable costs borne by non-Federal grants or by others cash donations from non-Federal third parties.

(2) The value of third party in-kind contributions applicable to the period to which the cost sharing or matching requirements applies.

(b) *Qualifications and exceptions* —(1) *Costs borne by other Federal grant agreements.* Except as provided by Federal statute, a cost sharing or matching requirement may not be met by costs borne by another Federal grant. This prohibition does not apply to income earned by a grantee or subgrantee from a contract awarded under another Federal grant.

(2) *General revenue sharing.* For the purpose of this section, general revenue sharing funds distributed under 31 U.S.C. 6702 are not considered Federal grant funds.

(3) *Cost or contributions counted towards other Federal costs-sharing requirements.* Neither costs nor the values of third party in-kind contributions may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of a grant agreement if they have been or will be counted towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement of another Federal grant agreement, a Federal procurement contract, or any other award of Federal funds.

(4) *Costs financed by program income.* Costs financed by program income, as defined in §85.25, shall not count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless they are expressly permitted in the terms of the assistance agreement. (This use of general program income is described in §85.25(g).)

(5) *Services or property financed by income earned by contractors.* Contractors under a grant may earn income from the activities carried out under the contract in addition to the amounts earned from the party awarding the contract. No costs of services or property supported by this income may count toward



satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement unless other provisions of the grant agreement expressly permit this kind of income to be used to meet the requirement.

(6) *Records.* Costs and third party in-kind contributions counting towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement must be verifiable from the records of grantees and subgrantee or cost-type contractors. These records must show how the value placed on third party in-kind contributions was derived. To the extent feasible, volunteer services will be supported by the same methods that the organization uses to support the allocability of regular personnel costs.

(7) *Special standards for third party in-kind contributions.* (i) Third party in-kind contributions count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only where, if the party receiving the contributions were to pay for them, the payments would be allowable costs.

(ii) Some third party in-kind contributions are goods and services that, if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor receiving the contribution had to pay for them, the payments would have been an indirect costs. Costs sharing or matching credit for such contributions shall be given only if the grantee, subgrantee, or contractor has established, along with its regular indirect cost rate, a special rate for allocating to individual projects or programs the value of the contributions.

(iii) A third party in-kind contribution to a fixed-price contract may count towards satisfying a cost sharing or matching requirement only if it results in:

(A) An increase in the services or property provided under the contract (without additional cost to the grantee or subgrantee) or

(B) A cost savings to the grantee or subgrantee.

(iv) The values placed on third party in-kind contributions for cost sharing or matching purposes will conform to the rules in the succeeding sections of this part. If a third party in-kind contribution is a type not treated in those sections, the value placed upon it shall be fair and reasonable.

(c) *Valuation of donated services* —(1) *Volunteer services.* Unpaid services provided to a grantee or subgrantee by individuals will be valued at rates consistent with those ordinarily paid for similar work in the grantee's or subgrantee's organization. If the grantee or subgrantee does not have employees performing similar work, the rates will be consistent with those ordinarily paid by other employers for similar work in the same labor market. In either case, a reasonable amount for fringe benefits may be included in the valuation.

(2) *Employees of other organizations.* When an employer other than a grantee, subgrantee, or cost-type contractor furnishes free of charge the services of an employee in the employee's normal line of work, the services will be valued at the employee's regular rate of pay exclusive of the employee's fringe benefits and overhead costs. If the services are in a different line of work, paragraph (c)(1) of this section applies.

(d) *Valuation of third party donated supplies and loaned equipment or space.* (1) If a third party donates supplies, the contribution will be valued at the market value of the supplies at the time of donation.

(2) If a third party donates the use of equipment or space in a building but retains title, the contribution will be valued at the fair rental rate of the equipment or space.

(e) *Valuation of third party donated equipment, buildings, and land.* If a third party donates equipment, buildings, or land, and title passes to a grantee or subgrantee, the treatment of the donated property will depend upon the purpose of the grant or subgrant, as follows:

(1) *Awards for capital expenditures.* If the purpose of the grant or subgrant is to assist the grantee or subgrantee in the acquisition of property, the market value of that property at the time of donation may be counted as cost sharing or matching,



(2) *Other awards.* If assisting in the acquisition of property is not the purpose of the grant or subgrant, paragraphs (e)(2) (i) and (ii) of this section apply:

(i) If approval is obtained from the awarding agency, the market value at the time of donation of the donated equipment or buildings and the fair rental rate of the donated land may be counted as cost sharing or matching. In the case of a subgrant, the terms of the grant agreement may require that the approval be obtained from the Federal agency as well as the grantee. In all cases, the approval may be given only if a purchase of the equipment or rental of the land would be approved as an allowable direct cost. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost-sharing or matching.

(ii) If approval is not obtained under paragraph (e)(2)(i) of this section, no amount may be counted for donated land, and only depreciation or use allowances may be counted for donated equipment and buildings. The depreciation or use allowances for this property are not treated as third party in-kind contributions. Instead, they are treated as costs incurred by the grantee or subgrantee. They are computed and allocated (usually as indirect costs) in accordance with the cost principles specified in §85.22, in the same way as depreciation or use allowances for purchased equipment and buildings. The amount of depreciation or use allowances for donated equipment and buildings is based on the property's market value at the time it was donated.

(f) *Valuation of grantee or subgrantee donated real property for construction/acquisition.* If a grantee or subgrantee donates real property for a construction or facilities acquisition project, the current market value of that property may be counted as cost sharing or matching. If any part of the donated property was acquired with Federal funds, only the non-federal share of the property may be counted as cost sharing or matching.

(g) *Appraisal of real property.* In some cases under paragraphs (d), (e) and (f) of this section, it will be necessary to establish the market value of land or a building or the fair rental rate of land or of space in a building. In these cases, the Federal agency may require the market value or fair rental value be set by an independent appraiser, and that the value or rate be certified by the grantee. This requirement will also be imposed by the grantee on subgrantees.

## **§ 85.25 Program income.**

 [top](#)

(a) *General.* Grantees are encouraged to earn income to defray program costs. Program income includes income from fees for services performed, from the use or rental of real or personal property acquired with grant funds, from the sale of commodities or items fabricated under a grant agreement, and from payments of principal and interest on loans made with grant funds. Except as otherwise provided in regulations of the Federal agency, program income does not include interest on grant funds, rebates, credits, discounts, refunds, etc. and interest earned on any of them.

(b) *Definition of program income.* Program income means gross income received by the grantee or subgrantee directly generated by a grant supported activity, or earned only as a result of the grant agreement during the grant period. *During the grant period* is the time between the effective date of the award and the ending date of the award reflected in the final financial report.

(c) *Cost of generating program income.* If authorized by Federal regulations or the grant agreement, costs incident to the generation of program income may be deducted from gross income to determine program income.

(d) *Governmental revenues.* Taxes, special assessments, levies, fines, and other such revenues raised by a grantee or subgrantee are not program income unless the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income.



(e) *Royalties*. Income from royalties and license fees for copyrighted material, patents, and inventions developed by a grantee or subgrantee is program income only if the revenues are specifically identified in the grant agreement or Federal agency regulations as program income. (See §85.34.)

(f) *Property*. Proceeds from the sale of real property or equipment will be handled in accordance with the requirements of §§85.31 and 85.32.

(g) *Use of program income*. Program income shall be deducted from outlays which may be both Federal and non-Federal as described below, unless the Federal agency regulations or the grant agreement specify another alternative (or a combination of the alternatives). In specifying alternatives, the Federal agency may distinguish between income earned by the grantee and income earned by subgrantees and between the sources, kinds, or amounts of income. When Federal agencies authorize the alternatives in paragraphs (g) (2) and (3) of this section, program income in excess of any limits stipulated shall also be deducted from outlays.

(1) *Deduction*. Ordinarily program income shall be deducted from total allowable costs to determine the net allowable costs. Program income shall be used for current costs unless the Federal agency authorizes otherwise. Program income which the grantee did not anticipate at the time of the award shall be used to reduce the Federal agency and grantee contributions rather than to increase the funds committed to the project.

(2) *Addition*. When authorized, program income may be added to the funds committed to the grant agreement by the Federal agency and the grantee. The program income shall be used for the purposes and under the conditions of the grant agreement.

(3) *Cost sharing or matching*. When authorized, program income may be used to meet the cost sharing or matching requirement of the grant agreement. The amount of the Federal grant award remains the same.

(h) *Income after the award period*. There are no Federal requirements governing the disposition of program income earned after the end of the award period (i.e., until the ending date of the final financial report, see paragraph (a) of this section), unless the terms of the agreement or the Federal agency regulations provide otherwise.

## **§ 85.26 Non-Federal audit.**

[↑ top](#)

(a) *Basic rule*. Grantees and subgrantees are responsible for obtaining audits in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 (31 U.S.C. 7501–7507) and revised OMB Circular A–133, “Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations.” The audits shall be made by an independent auditor in accordance with generally accepted government auditing standards covering financial audits.

(b) *Subgrantees*. State or local governments, as those terms are defined for purposes of the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996, that provide Federal awards to a subgrantee which expends \$300,000 or more (or other amount as specified by OMB) in Federal awards in a fiscal year, shall:

(1) Determine whether State or local subgrantees have met the audit requirements of the Act and whether subgrantees covered by OMB Circular A–110, “Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations,” have met the audit requirements of the Act. Commercial contractors (private for-profit and private and governmental organizations) providing goods and services to State and local governments are not required to have a single audit performed. State and local governments should use their own procedures to ensure that the contractor has complied with laws and regulations affecting the expenditure of Federal funds;

(2) Determine whether the subgrantee spent Federal assistance funds provided in accordance with applicable laws and regulations. This may be accomplished by reviewing an audit of the subgrantee made in



accordance with the Act, Circular A-133 (as set forth in 24 CFR part 45), or through other means (e.g., program reviews) if the subgrantee has not had such an audit;

(3) Ensure that appropriate corrective action is taken within six months after receipt of the audit report in instance of noncompliance with Federal laws and regulations;

(4) Consider whether subgrantee audits necessitate adjustment of the grantee's own records; and

(5) Require each subgrantee to permit independent auditors to have access to the records and financial statements.

(c) *Auditor selection.* In arranging for audit services, §85.36 shall be followed.

[53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 57 FR 33255, July 27, 1992; 62 FR 61617, Nov. 18, 1997]

## **Changes, Property, and Subawards**

[↑ top](#)

### **§ 85.30 Changes.**

[↑ top](#)

(a) *General.* Grantees and subgrantees are permitted to rebudget within the approved direct cost budget to meet unanticipated requirements and may make limited program changes to the approved project. However, unless waived by the awarding agency, certain types of post-award changes in budgets and projects shall require the prior written approval of the awarding agency.

(b) *Relation to cost principles.* The applicable cost principles (see §85.22) contain requirements for prior approval of certain types of costs. Except where waived, those requirements apply to all grants and subgrants even if paragraphs (c) through (f) of this section do not.

(c) *Budget changes* —(1) *Nonconstruction projects.* Except as stated in other regulations or an award document, grantees or subgrantees shall obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following changes is anticipated under a nonconstruction award:

(i) Any revision which would result in the need for additional funding.

(ii) Unless waived by the awarding agency, cumulative transfers among direct cost categories, or, if applicable, among separately budgeted programs, projects, functions, or activities which exceed or are expected to exceed ten percent of the current total approved budget, whenever the awarding agency's share exceeds \$100,000.

(iii) Transfer of funds allotted for training allowances (i.e., from direct payments to trainees to other expense categories).

(2) *Construction projects.* Grantees and subgrantees shall obtain prior written approval for any budget revision which would result in the need for additional funds.

(3) *Combined construction and nonconstruction projects.* When a grant or subgrant provides funding for both construction and nonconstruction activities, the grantee or subgrantee must obtain prior written approval from the awarding agency before making any fund or budget transfer from nonconstruction to construction or vice versa.



(d) *Programmatic changes.* Grantees or subgrantees must obtain the prior approval of the awarding agency whenever any of the following actions is anticipated:

(1) Any revision of the scope or objectives of the project (regardless of whether there is an associated budget revision requiring prior approval).

(2) Need to extend the period of availability of funds.

(3) Changes in key persons in cases where specified in an application or a grant award. In research projects, a change in the project director or principal investigator shall always require approval unless waived by the awarding agency.

(4) Under nonconstruction projects, contracting out, subgranting (if authorized by law) or otherwise obtaining the services of a third party to perform activities which are central to the purposes of the award. This approval requirement is in addition to the approval requirements of §85.36 but does not apply to the procurement of equipment, supplies, and general support services.

(e) *Additional prior approval requirements.* The awarding agency may not require prior approval for any budget revision which is not described in paragraph (c) of this section.

(f) *Requesting prior approval.* (1) A request for prior approval of any budget revision will be in the same budget format the grantee used in its application and shall be accompanied by a narrative justification for the proposed revision.

(2) A request for a prior approval under the applicable Federal cost principles (see §85.22) may be made by letter.

(3) A request by a subgrantee for prior approval will be addressed in writing to the grantee. The grantee will promptly review such request and shall approve or disapprove the request in writing. A grantee will not approve any budget or project revision which is inconsistent with the purpose or terms and conditions of the Federal grant to the grantee. If the revision, requested by the subgrantee would result in a change to the grantee's approved project which requires Federal prior approval, the grantee will obtain the Federal agency's approval before approving the subgrantee's request.

## **§ 85.31 Real property.**

[!\[\]\(cf531ed27e91483460120fcc057b3901\_img.jpg\) top](#)

(a) *Title.* Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to real property acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *Use.* Except as otherwise provided by Federal statutes, real property will be used for the originally authorized purposes as long as needed for that purposes, and the grantee or subgrantee shall not dispose of or encumber its title or other interests.

(c) *Disposition.* When real property is no longer needed for the originally authorized purpose, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the awarding agency. The instructions will provide for one of the following alternatives:

(1) *Retention of title.* Retain title after compensating the awarding agency. The amount paid to the awarding agency will be computed by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the fair market value of the property. However, in those situations where a grantee or subgrantee is disposing of real property acquired with grant funds and acquiring replacement real property under the same program, the net proceeds from the disposition may be used as an offset to the cost of the replacement property.



(2) *Sale of property.* Sell the property and compensate the awarding agency. The amount due to the awarding agency will be calculated by applying the awarding agency's percentage of participation in the cost of the original purchase to the proceeds of the sale after deduction of any actual and reasonable selling and fixing-up expenses. If the grant is still active, the net proceeds from sale may be offset against the original cost of the property. When a grantee or subgrantee is directed to sell property, sales procedures shall be followed that provide for competition to the extent practicable and result in the highest possible return.

(3) *Transfer of title.* Transfer title to the awarding agency or to a third-party designated/approved by the awarding agency. The grantee or subgrantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the grantee or subgrantee's percentage of participation in the purchase of the real property to the current fair market value of the property.

## **§ 85.32 Equipment.**

 [top](#)

(a) *Title.* Subject to the obligations and conditions set forth in this section, title to equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest upon acquisition in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.

(b) *States.* A State will use, manage, and dispose of equipment acquired under a grant by the State in accordance with State laws and procedures. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (c) through (e) of this section.

(c) *Use.* (1) Equipment shall be used by the grantee or subgrantee in the program or project for which it was acquired as long as needed, whether or not the project or program continues to be supported by Federal funds. When no longer needed for the original program or project, the equipment may be used in other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency.

(2) The grantee or subgrantee shall also make equipment available for use on other projects or programs currently or previously supported by the Federal Government, providing such use will not interfere with the work on the projects or program for which it was originally acquired. First preference for other use shall be given to other programs or projects supported by the awarding agency. User fees should be considered if appropriate.

(3) Notwithstanding the encouragement in §85.25(a) to earn program income, the grantee or subgrantee must not use equipment acquired with grant funds to provide services for a fee to compete unfairly with private companies that provide equivalent services, unless specifically permitted or contemplated by Federal statute.

(4) When acquiring replacement equipment, the grantee or subgrantee may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property, subject to the approval of the awarding agency.

(d) *Management requirements.* Procedures for managing equipment (including replacement equipment), whether acquired in whole or in part with grant funds, until disposition takes place will, as a minimum, meet the following requirements:

(1) Property records must be maintained that include a description of the property, a serial number or other identification number, the source of property, who holds title, the acquisition date, and cost of the property, percentage of Federal participation in the cost of the property, the location, use and condition of the property, and any ultimate disposition data including the date of disposal and sale price of the property.

(2) A physical inventory of the property must be taken and the results reconciled with the property records at least once every two years.

(3) A control system must be developed to ensure adequate safeguards to prevent loss, damage, or theft of the property. Any loss, damage, or theft shall be investigated.



- (4) Adequate maintenance procedures must be developed to keep the property in good condition.
- (5) If the grantee or subgrantee is authorized or required to sell the property, proper sales procedures must be established to ensure the highest possible return.

(e) *Disposition.* When original or replacement equipment acquired under a grant or subgrant is no longer needed for the original project or program or for other activities currently or previously supported by a Federal agency, disposition of the equipment will be made as follows:

- (1) Items of equipment with a current per-unit fair market value of less than \$5,000 may be retained, sold or otherwise disposed of with no further obligation to the awarding agency.
- (2) Items of equipment with a current per unit fair market value in excess of \$5,000 may be retained or sold and the awarding agency shall have a right to an amount calculated by multiplying the current market value or proceeds from sale by the awarding agency's share of the equipment.
- (3) In cases where a grantee or subgrantee fails to take appropriate disposition actions, the awarding agency may direct the grantee or subgrantee to take excess and disposition actions.

(f) *Federal equipment.* In the event a grantee or subgrantee is provided federally-owned equipment:

- (1) Title will remain vested in the Federal Government.
- (2) Grantees or subgrantees will manage the equipment in accordance with Federal agency rules and procedures, and submit an annual inventory listing.
- (3) When the equipment is no longer needed, the grantee or subgrantee will request disposition instructions from the Federal agency.

(g) *Right to transfer title.* The Federal awarding agency may reserve the right to transfer title to the Federal Government or a third party named by the awarding agency when such a third party is otherwise eligible under existing statutes. Such transfers shall be subject to the following standards:

- (1) The property shall be identified in the grant or otherwise made known to the grantee in writing.
- (2) The Federal awarding agency shall issue disposition instruction within 120 calendar days after the end of the Federal support of the project for which it was acquired. If the Federal awarding agency fails to issue disposition instructions within the 120 calendar-day period the grantee shall follow §85.32(e).
- (3) When title to equipment is transferred, the grantee shall be paid an amount calculated by applying the percentage of participation in the purchase to the current fair market value of the property.

### **§ 85.33 Supplies.**

 [top](#)

- (a) *Title.* Title to supplies acquired under a grant or subgrant will vest, upon acquisition, in the grantee or subgrantee respectively.
- (b) *Disposition.* If there is a residual inventory of unused supplies exceeding \$5,000 in total aggregate fair market value upon termination or completion of the award, and if the supplies are not needed for any other federally sponsored programs or projects, the grantee or subgrantee shall compensate the awarding agency for its share.

### **§ 85.34 Copyrights.**



[↑ top](#)

The Federal awarding agency reserves a royalty-free, nonexclusive, and irrevocable license to reproduce, publish or otherwise use, and to authorize others to use, for Federal Government purposes:

- (a) The copyright in any work developed under a grant, subgrant, or contract under a grant or subgrant; and
- (b) Any rights of copyright to which a grantee, subgrantee or a contractor purchases ownership with grant support.

#### **§ 85.35 Subawards to debarred and suspended parties.**

[↑ top](#)

Grantees and subgrantees must not make any award or permit any award (subgrant or contract) at any tier to any party that is debarred or suspended or is otherwise excluded from or ineligible for participation in federal assistance programs subject to 2 CFR part 2424.

[72 FR 73493, Dec. 27, 2007]

#### **§ 85.36 Procurement.**

[↑ top](#)

- (a) *States.* When procuring property and services under a grant, a State will follow the same policies and procedures it uses for procurements from its non-Federal funds. The State will ensure that every purchase order or other contract includes any clauses required by Federal statutes and executive orders and their implementing regulations. Other grantees and subgrantees will follow paragraphs (b) through (i) in this section.
- (b) *Procurement standards.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees will use their own procurement procedures which reflect applicable State and local laws and regulations, provided that the procurements conform to applicable Federal law and the standards identified in this section.
- (2) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a contract administration system which ensures that contractors perform in accordance with the terms, conditions, and specifications of their contracts or purchase orders.
- (3) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or subgrantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:
  - (i) The employee, officer or agent,
  - (ii) Any member of his immediate family,
  - (iii) His or her partner, or
  - (iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee's or subgrantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors, or parties to subagreements. Grantee and subgrantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary



actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and subgrantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent, or potential conflicts of interest.

(4) Grantee and subgrantee procedures will provide for a review of proposed procurements to avoid purchase of unnecessary or duplicative items. Consideration should be given to consolidating or breaking out procurements to obtain a more economical purchase. Where appropriate, an analysis will be made of lease versus purchase alternatives, and any other appropriate analysis to determine the most economical approach.

(5) To foster greater economy and efficiency, grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to enter into State and local intergovernmental agreements for procurement or use of common goods and services.

(6) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use Federal excess and surplus property in lieu of purchasing new equipment and property whenever such use is feasible and reduces project costs.

(7) Grantees and subgrantees are encouraged to use value engineering clauses in contracts for construction projects of sufficient size to offer reasonable opportunities for cost reductions. Value engineering is a systematic and creative analysis of each contract item or task to ensure that its essential function is provided at the overall lower cost.

(8) Grantees and subgrantees will make awards only to responsible contractors possessing the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement. Consideration will be given to such matters as contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

(9) Grantees and subgrantees will maintain records sufficient to detail the significant history of a procurement. These records will include, but are not necessarily limited to the following: rationale for the method of procurement, selection of contract type, contractor selection or rejection, and the basis for the contract price.

(10) Grantees and subgrantees will use time and material type contracts only—

(i) After a determination that no other contract is suitable, and

(ii) If the contract includes a ceiling price that the contractor exceeds at its own risk.

(11) Grantees and subgrantees alone will be responsible, in accordance with good administrative practice and sound business judgment, for the settlement of all contractual and administrative issues arising out of procurements. These issues include, but are not limited to source evaluation, protests, disputes, and claims. These standards do not relieve the grantee or subgrantee of any contractual responsibilities under its contracts. Federal agencies will not substitute their judgment for that of the grantee or subgrantee unless the matter is primarily a Federal concern. Violations of law will be referred to the local, State, or Federal authority having proper jurisdiction.

(12) Grantees and subgrantees will have protest procedures to handle and resolve disputes relating to their procurements and shall in all instances disclose information regarding the protest to the awarding agency. A protestor must exhaust all administrative remedies with the grantee and subgrantee before pursuing a protest with the Federal agency. Reviews of protests by the Federal agency will be limited to:

(i) Violations of Federal law or regulations and the standards of this section (violations of State or local law will be under the jurisdiction of State or local authorities) and

(ii) Violations of the grantee's or subgrantee's protest procedures for failure to review a complaint or protest. Protests received by the Federal agency other than those specified above will be referred to the grantee or subgrantee.



(c) *Competition.* (1) All procurement transactions will be conducted in a manner providing full and open competition consistent with the standards of §85.36. Some of the situations considered to be restrictive of competition include but are not limited to:

- (i) Placing unreasonable requirements on firms in order for them to qualify to do business,
- (ii) Requiring unnecessary experience and excessive bonding,
- (iii) Noncompetitive pricing practices between firms or between affiliated companies,
- (iv) Noncompetitive awards to consultants that are on retainer contracts,
- (v) Organizational conflicts of interest,
- (vi) Specifying only a *brand name* product instead of allowing an *equal* product to be offered and describing the performance of other relevant requirements of the procurement, and
- (vii) Any arbitrary action in the procurement process.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees will conduct procurements in a manner that prohibits the use of statutorily or administratively imposed in-State or local geographical preferences in the evaluation of bids or proposals, except in those cases where applicable Federal statutes expressly mandate or encourage geographic preference. Nothing in this section preempts State licensing laws. When contracting for architectural and engineering (A/E) services, geographic location may be a selection criteria provided its application leaves an appropriate number of qualified firms, given the nature and size of the project, to compete for the contract.

(3) Grantees will have written selection procedures for procurement transactions. These procedures will ensure that all solicitations:

(i) Incorporate a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements for the material, product, or service to be procured. Such description shall not, in competitive procurements, contain features which unduly restrict competition. The description may include a statement of the qualitative nature of the material, product or service to be procured, and when necessary, shall set forth those minimum essential characteristics and standards to which it must conform if it is to satisfy its intended use. Detailed product specifications should be avoided if at all possible. When it is impractical or uneconomical to make a clear and accurate description of the technical requirements, a *brand name or equal* description may be used as a means to define the performance or other salient requirements of a procurement. The specific features of the named brand which must be met by offerors shall be clearly stated; and

(ii) Identify all requirements which the offerors must fulfill and all other factors to be used in evaluating bids or proposals.

(4) Grantees and subgrantees will ensure that all prequalified lists of persons, firms, or products which are used in acquiring goods and services are current and include enough qualified sources to ensure maximum open and free competition. Also, grantees and subgrantees will not preclude potential bidders from qualifying during the solicitation period.

(d) *Methods of procurement to be followed.* (1) Procurement by *small purchase procedures.* Small purchase procedures are those relatively simple and informal procurement methods for securing services, supplies, or other property that do not cost more than the simplified acquisition threshold fixed at 41 U.S.C. 403(11) (currently set at \$100,000). If small purchase procedures are used, price or rate quotations shall be obtained from an adequate number of qualified sources.

(2) Procurement by *sealed bids* (formal advertising). Bids are publicly solicited and a firm-fixed-price contract (lump sum or unit price) is awarded to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the invitation for bids, is the lowest in price. The sealed bid method is the preferred method for procuring construction, if the conditions in §85.36(d)(2)(i) apply.



(i) In order for sealed bidding to be feasible, the following conditions should be present:

(A) A complete, adequate, and realistic specification or purchase description is available;

(B) Two or more responsible bidders are willing and able to compete effectively and for the business; and

(C) The procurement lends itself to a firm fixed price contract and the selection of the successful bidder can be made principally on the basis of price.

(ii) If sealed bids are used, the following requirements apply:

(A) The invitation for bids will be publicly advertised and bids shall be solicited from an adequate number of known suppliers, providing them sufficient time prior to the date set for opening the bids;

(B) The invitation for bids, which will include any specifications and pertinent attachments, shall define the items or services in order for the bidder to properly respond;

(C) All bids will be publicly opened at the time and place prescribed in the invitation for bids;

(D) A firm fixed-price contract award will be made in writing to the lowest responsive and responsible bidder. Where specified in bidding documents, factors such as discounts, transportation cost, and life cycle costs shall be considered in determining which bid is lowest. Payment discounts will only be used to determine the low bid when prior experience indicates that such discounts are usually taken advantage of; and

(E) Any or all bids may be rejected if there is a sound documented reason.

(3) Procurement by *competitive proposals*. The technique of competitive proposals is normally conducted with more than one source submitting an offer, and either a fixed-price or cost-reimbursement type contract is awarded. It is generally used when conditions are not appropriate for the use of sealed bids. If this method is used, the following requirements apply:

(i) Requests for proposals will be publicized and identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance. Any response to publicized requests for proposals shall be honored to the maximum extent practical;

(ii) Proposals will be solicited from an adequate number of qualified sources;

(iii) Grantees and subgrantees will have a method for conducting technical evaluations of the proposals received and for selecting awardees;

(iv) Awards will be made to the responsible firm whose proposal is most advantageous to the program, with price and other factors considered; and

(v) Grantees and subgrantees may use competitive proposal procedures for qualifications-based procurement of architectural/engineering (A/E) professional services whereby competitors' qualifications are evaluated and the most qualified competitor is selected, subject to negotiation of fair and reasonable compensation. The method, where price is not used as a selection factor, can only be used in procurement of A/E professional services. It cannot be used to purchase other types of services though A/E firms are a potential source to perform the proposed effort.

(4) Procurement by *noncompetitive proposals* is procurement through solicitation of a proposal from only one source, or after solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.

(i) Procurement by noncompetitive proposals may be used only when the award of a contract is infeasible under small purchase procedures, sealed bids or competitive proposals and one of the following circumstances applies:



- (A) The item is available only from a single source;
  - (B) The public exigency or emergency for the requirement will not permit a delay resulting from competitive solicitation;
  - (C) The awarding agency authorizes noncompetitive proposals; or
  - (D) After solicitation of a number of sources, competition is determined inadequate.
- (ii) Cost analysis, i.e., verifying the proposed cost data, the projections of the data, and the evaluation of the specific elements of costs and profits, is required.
  - (iii) Grantees and subgrantees may be required to submit the proposed procurement to the awarding agency for pre-award review in accordance with paragraph (g) of this section.
- (e) *Contracting with small and minority firms, women's business enterprise and labor surplus area firms.* (1) The grantee and subgrantee will take all necessary affirmative steps to assure that minority firms, women's business enterprises, and labor surplus area firms are used when possible.

(2) Affirmative steps shall include:

- (i) Placing qualified small and minority businesses and women's business enterprises on solicitation lists;
  - (ii) Assuring that small and minority businesses, and women's business enterprises are solicited whenever they are potential sources;
  - (iii) Dividing total requirements, when economically feasible, into smaller tasks or quantities to permit maximum participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;
  - (iv) Establishing delivery schedules, where the requirement permits, which encourage participation by small and minority business, and women's business enterprises;
  - (v) Using the services and assistance of the Small Business Administration, and the Minority Business Development Agency of the Department of Commerce; and
  - (vi) Requiring the prime contractor, if subcontracts are to be let, to take the affirmative steps listed in paragraphs (e)(2) (i) through (v) of this section.
- (f) *Contract cost and price.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must perform a cost or price analysis in connection with every procurement action including contract modifications. The method and degree of analysis is dependent on the facts surrounding the particular procurement situation, but as a starting point, grantees must make independent estimates before receiving bids or proposals. A cost analysis must be performed when the offeror is required to submit the elements of his estimated cost, e.g., under professional, consulting, and architectural engineering services contracts. A cost analysis will be necessary when adequate price competition is lacking, and for sole source procurements, including contract modifications or change orders, unless price reasonableness can be established on the basis of a catalog or market price of a commercial product sold in substantial quantities to the general public or based on prices set by law or regulation. A price analysis will be used in all other instances to determine the reasonableness of the proposed contract price.
- (2) Grantees and subgrantees will negotiate profit as a separate element of the price for each contract in which there is no price competition and in all cases where cost analysis is performed. To establish a fair and reasonable profit, consideration will be given to the complexity of the work to be performed, the risk borne by the contractor, the contractor's investment, the amount of subcontracting, the quality of its record of past performance, and industry profit rates in the surrounding geographical area for similar work.



(3) Costs or prices based on estimated costs for contracts under grants will be allowable only to the extent that costs incurred or cost estimates included in negotiated prices are consistent with Federal cost principles (see §85.22). Grantees may reference their own cost principles that comply with the applicable Federal cost principles.

(4) The cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction cost methods of contracting shall not be used.

(g) *Awarding agency review.* (1) Grantees and subgrantees must make available, upon request of the awarding agency, technical specifications on proposed procurements where the awarding agency believes such review is needed to ensure that the item and/or service specified is the one being proposed for purchase. This review generally will take place prior to the time the specification is incorporated into a solicitation document. However, if the grantee or subgrantee desires to have the review accomplished after a solicitation has been developed, the awarding agency may still review the specifications, with such review usually limited to the technical aspects of the proposed purchase.

(2) Grantees and subgrantees must on request make available for awarding agency pre-award review procurement documents, such as requests for proposals or invitations for bids, independent cost estimates, etc. when:

(i) A grantee's or subgrantee's procurement procedures or operation fails to comply with the procurement standards in this section; or

(ii) The procurement is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded without competition or only one bid or offer is received in response to a solicitation; or

(iii) The procurement, which is expected to exceed the simplified acquisition threshold, specifies a "brand name" product; or

(iv) The proposed award is more than the simplified acquisition threshold and is to be awarded to other than the apparent low bidder under a sealed bid procurement; or

(v) A proposed contract modification changes the scope of a contract or increases the contract amount by more than the simplified acquisition threshold.

(3) A grantee or subgrantee will be exempt from the pre-award review in paragraph (g)(2) of this section if the awarding agency determines that its procurement systems comply with the standards of this section.

(i) A grantee or subgrantee may request that its procurement system be reviewed by the awarding agency to determine whether its system meets these standards in order for its system to be certified. Generally, these reviews shall occur where there is a continuous high-dollar funding, and third-party contracts are awarded on a regular basis.

(ii) A grantee or subgrantee may self-certify its procurement system. Such self-certification shall not limit the awarding agency's right to survey the system. Under a self-certification procedure, awarding agencies may wish to rely on written assurances from the grantee or subgrantee that it is complying with these standards. A grantee or subgrantee will cite specific procedures, regulations, standards, etc., as being in compliance with these requirements and have its system available for review.

(h) *Bonding requirements.* For construction or facility improvement contracts or subcontracts exceeding the simplified acquisition threshold, the awarding agency may accept the bonding policy and requirements of the grantee or subgrantee provided the awarding agency has made a determination that the awarding agency's interest is adequately protected. If such a determination has not been made, the minimum requirements shall be as follows:

(1) *A bid guarantee from each bidder equivalent to five percent of the bid price.* The "bid guarantee" shall consist of a firm commitment such as a bid bond, certified check, or other negotiable instrument



accompanying a bid as assurance that the bidder will, upon acceptance of his bid, execute such contractual documents as may be required within the time specified.

(2) *A performance bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "performance bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to secure fulfillment of all the contractor's obligations under such contract.

(3) *A payment bond on the part of the contractor for 100 percent of the contract price.* A "payment bond" is one executed in connection with a contract to assure payment as required by law of all persons supplying labor and material in the execution of the work provided for in the contract.

(i) *Contract provisions.* A grantee's and subgrantee's contracts must contain provisions in paragraph (i) of this section. Federal agencies are permitted to require changes, remedies, changed conditions, access and records retention, suspension of work, and other clauses approved by the Office of Federal Procurement Policy.

(1) Administrative, contractual, or legal remedies in instances where contractors violate or breach contract terms, and provide for such sanctions and penalties as may be appropriate. (Contracts more than the simplified acquisition threshold)

(2) Termination for cause and for convenience by the grantee or subgrantee including the manner by which it will be effected and the basis for settlement. (All contracts in excess of \$10,000)

(3) Compliance with Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, entitled "Equal Employment Opportunity," as amended by Executive Order 11375 of October 13, 1967, and as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (41 CFR chapter 60). (All construction contracts awarded in excess of \$10,000 by grantees and their contractors or subgrantees)

(4) Compliance with the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 U.S.C. 874) as supplemented in Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 3). (All contracts and subgrants for construction or repair)

(5) Compliance with the Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a to 276a-7) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts in excess of \$2000 awarded by grantees and subgrantees when required by Federal grant program legislation)

(6) Compliance with Sections 103 and 107 of the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (40 U.S.C. 327-330) as supplemented by Department of Labor regulations (29 CFR part 5). (Construction contracts awarded by grantees and subgrantees in excess of \$2000, and in excess of \$2500 for other contracts which involve the employment of mechanics or laborers)

(7) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to reporting.

(8) Notice of awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to patent rights with respect to any discovery or invention which arises or is developed in the course of or under such contract.

(9) Awarding agency requirements and regulations pertaining to copyrights and rights in data.

(10) Access by the grantee, the subgrantee, the Federal grantor agency, the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their duly authorized representatives to any books, documents, papers, and records of the contractor which are directly pertinent to that specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts, and transcriptions.

(11) Retention of all required records for three years after grantees or subgrantees make final payments and all other pending matters are closed.

(12) Compliance with all applicable standards, orders, or requirements issued under section 306 of the Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 1857(h)), section 508 of the Clean Water Act (33 U.S.C. 1368), Executive Order



11738, and Environmental Protection Agency regulations (40 CFR part 15). (Contracts, subcontracts, and subgrants of amounts in excess of \$100,000).

(13) Mandatory standards and policies relating to energy efficiency which are contained in the state energy conservation plan issued in compliance with the Energy Policy and Conservation Act (Pub. L. 94-163. 89 Stat. 871).

[53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 60 FR 19639, 19642, Apr. 19, 1995]

#### **§ 85.37 Subgrants.**

 [top](#)

(a) *States.* States shall follow state law and procedures when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. States shall:

- (1) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations;
- (2) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statute and regulation;
- (3) Ensure that a provision for compliance with §85.42 is placed in every cost reimbursement subgrant; and
- (4) Conform any advances of grant funds to subgrantees substantially to the same standards of timing and amount that apply to cash advances by Federal agencies.

(b) *All other grantees.* All other grantees shall follow the provisions of this part which are applicable to awarding agencies when awarding and administering subgrants (whether on a cost reimbursement or fixed amount basis) of financial assistance to local and Indian tribal governments. Grantees shall:

- (1) Ensure that every subgrant includes a provision for compliance with this part;
- (2) Ensure that every subgrant includes any clauses required by Federal statute and executive orders and their implementing regulations; and
- (3) Ensure that subgrantees are aware of requirements imposed upon them by Federal statutes and regulations.

(c) *Exceptions.* By their own terms, certain provisions of this part do not apply to the award and administration of subgrants:

- (1) Section 85.10;
- (2) Section 85.11;
- (3) The letter-of-credit procedures specified in Treasury Regulations at 31 CFR part 205, cited in §85.21; and
- (4) Section 85.50.

#### **Reports, Records, Retention, and Enforcement**



[↑ top](#)

## § 85.40 Monitoring and reporting program performance.

[↑ top](#)

(a) *Monitoring by grantees.* Grantees are responsible for managing the day-to-day operations of grant and subgrant supported activities. Grantees must monitor grant and subgrant supported activities to assure compliance with applicable Federal requirements and that performance goals are being achieved. Grantee monitoring must cover each program, function or activity.

(b) *Nonconstruction performance reports.* The Federal agency may, if it decides that performance information available from subsequent applications contains sufficient information to meet its programmatic needs, require the grantee to submit a performance report only upon expiration or termination of grant support. Unless waived by the Federal agency this report will be due on the same date as the final Financial Status Report.

(1) Grantees shall submit annual performance reports unless the awarding agency requires quarterly or semi-annual reports. However, performance reports will not be required more frequently than quarterly. Annual reports shall be due 90 days after the grant year, quarterly or semi-annual reports shall be due 30 days after the reporting period. The final performance report will be due 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support. If a justified request is submitted by a grantee, the Federal agency may extend the due date for any performance report. Additionally, requirements for unnecessary performance reports may be waived by the Federal agency.

(2) Performance reports will contain, for each grant, brief information on the following:

(i) A comparison of actual accomplishments to the objectives established for the period. Where the output of the project can be quantified, a computation of the cost per unit of output may be required if that information will be useful.

(ii) The reasons for slippage if established objectives were not met.

(iii) Additional pertinent information including, when appropriate, analysis and explanation of cost overruns or high unit costs.

(3) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of performance reports.

(4) Grantees will adhere to the standards in this section in prescribing performance reporting requirements for subgrantees.

(c) *Construction performance reports.* For the most part, on-site technical inspections and certified percentage-of-completion data are relied on heavily by Federal agencies to monitor progress under construction grants and subgrants. The Federal agency will require additional formal performance reports only when considered necessary, and never more frequently than quarterly.

(d) *Significant developments.* Events may occur between the scheduled performance reporting dates which have significant impact upon the grant or subgrant supported activity. In such cases, the grantee must inform the Federal agency as soon as the following types of conditions become known:

(1) Problems, delays, or adverse conditions which will materially impair the ability to meet the objective of the award. This disclosure must include a statement of the action taken, or contemplated, and any assistance needed to resolve the situation.

(2) Favorable developments which enable meeting time schedules and objectives sooner or at less cost than anticipated or producing more beneficial results than originally planned.



(e) Federal agencies may make site visits as warranted by program needs.

(f) *Waivers, extensions.* (1) Federal agencies may waive any performance report required by this part if not needed.

(2) The grantee may waive any performance report from a subgrantee when not needed. The grantee may extend the due date for any performance report from a subgrantee if the grantee will still be able to meet its performance reporting obligations to the Federal agency.

#### **§ 85.41 Financial reporting.**

 [top](#)

(a) *General.* (1) Except as provided in paragraphs (a) (2) and (5) of this section, grantees will use only the forms specified in paragraphs (a) through (e) of this section, and such supplementary or other forms as may from time to time be authorized by OMB, for:

(i) Submitting financial reports to Federal agencies, or

(ii) Requesting advances or reimbursements when letters of credit are not used.

(2) Grantees need not apply the forms prescribed in this section in dealing with their subgrantees. However, grantees shall not impose more burdensome requirements on subgrantees.

(3) Grantees shall follow all applicable standard and supplemental Federal agency instructions approved by OMB to the extent required under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1980 for use in connection with forms specified in paragraphs (b) and (c) of this section. Federal agencies may issue substantive supplementary instructions only with the approval of OMB. Federal agencies may shade out or instruct the grantee to disregard any line item that the Federal agency finds unnecessary for its decisionmaking purposes.

(4) Grantees will not be required to submit more than the original and two copies of forms required under this part.

(5) Federal agencies may provide computer outputs to grantees to expedite or contribute to the accuracy of reporting. Federal agencies may accept the required information from grantees in machine usable format or computer printouts instead of prescribed forms.

(6) Federal agencies may waive any report required by this section if not needed.

(7) Federal agencies may extend the due date of any financial report upon receiving a justified request from a grantee.

(b) *Financial Status Report* —(1) *Form:* Grantees will use the FFR to report the status of funds for all non-construction grants, for construction grants or grants which include both construction and non-construction activities as determined by HUD.

(2) *Accounting basis.* HUD shall prescribe whether the FFR shall be on a cash or accrual basis. If HUD requires accrual information and the grantee's accounting records are not normally kept on the accrual basis, the grantee shall not be required to convert its accounting system but shall develop such accrual information through an analysis of the documentation on hand.

(3) HUD shall determine the frequency of the FFR for each project or program, considering the size and complexity of the particular project or program. However, the report will not be required more frequently than quarterly or less frequently than annually. The reporting period end dates shall be March 31, June 30, September 30 or December 31. A final FFR shall be required at the completion of the award agreement and shall use the end date of the project or grant period as the reporting end date.



(4) HUD requires recipients to submit the FFR (original and two copies), not later than 30 days after the end of each specified reporting period for quarterly and semiannual reports and 90 days for annual reports. Final reports shall be submitted no later than 90 days after the expiration or termination of grant support.

(c) (1) For grants paid by Treasury check advances or electronic transfer of funds, the grantee will submit the FFR, unless the terms of the award exempt the grantee from this requirement or proscribe an alternate method of financial reporting. HUD will use these reports to monitor cash advanced to grantees and to obtain disbursement or financial status information for each grant from grantees. The format of the FFR may be adapted as appropriate when reporting is to be accomplished with the assistance of automatic data processing equipment provided that the information to be submitted is not changed in substance. HUD may require forecasts of Federal cash requirements in the "Remarks" section of the report.

(2) *Cash in hands of subgrantees.* When considered necessary and feasible HUD may require grantees to report the amount of cash advances in excess of three days' needs in the hands of their subgrantees or contractors and to provide short narrative explanations of actions taken by the grantee to reduce the excess balances.

[53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 75 FR 41090, July 15, 2010]

#### **§ 85.42 Retention and access requirements for records.**

 [top](#)

(a) *Applicability.* (1) This section applies to all financial and programmatic records, supporting documents, statistical records, and other records of grantees or subgrantees which are:

- (i) Required to be maintained by the terms of this part, program regulations or the grant agreement, or
- (ii) Otherwise reasonably considered as pertinent to program regulations or the grant agreement.

(2) This section does not apply to records maintained by contractors or subcontractors. For a requirement to place a provision concerning records in certain kinds of contracts, see §85.36(i)(10).

(b) *Length of retention period.* (1) Except as otherwise provided, records must be retained for three years from the starting date specified in paragraph (c) of this section.

(2) If any litigation, claim, negotiation, audit or other action involving the records has been started before the expiration of the 3-year period, the records must be retained until completion of the action and resolution of all issues which arise from it, or until the end of the regular 3-year period, whichever is later.

(3) To avoid duplicate recordkeeping, awarding agencies may make special arrangements with grantees and subgrantees to retain any records which are continuously needed for joint use. The awarding agency will request transfer of records to its custody when it determines that the records possess long-term retention value. When the records are transferred to or maintained by the Federal agency, the 3-year retention requirement is not applicable to the grantee or subgrantee.

(c) *Starting date of retention period —(1) General.* When grant support is continued or renewed at annual or other intervals, the retention period for the records of each funding period starts on the day the grantee or subgrantee submits to the awarding agency its single or last expenditure report for that period. However, if grant support is continued or renewed quarterly, the retention period for each year's records starts on the day the grantee submits its expenditure report for the last quarter of the Federal fiscal year. In all other cases, the retention period starts on the day the grantee submits its final expenditure report. If an expenditure report has been waived, the retention period starts on the day the report would have been due.

(2) *Real property and equipment records.* The retention period for real property and equipment records starts from the date of the disposition or replacement or transfer at the direction of the awarding agency.



(3) *Records for income transactions after grant or subgrant support.* In some cases grantees must report income after the period of grant support. Where there is such a requirement, the retention period for the records pertaining to the earning of the income starts from the end of the grantee's fiscal year in which the income is earned.

(4) *Indirect cost rate proposals, cost allocations plans, etc.* This paragraph applies to the following types of documents, and their supporting records: Indirect cost rate computations or proposals, cost allocation plans, and any similar accounting computations of the rate at which a particular group of costs is chargeable (such as computer usage chargeback rates or composite fringe benefit rates).

(i) *If submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) to form the basis for negotiation of the rate, then the 3-year retention period for its supporting records starts from the date of such submission.

(ii) *If not submitted for negotiation.* If the proposal, plan, or other computation is not required to be submitted to the Federal Government (or to the grantee) for negotiation purposes, then the 3-year retention period for the proposal plan, or computation and its supporting records starts from end of the fiscal year (or other accounting period) covered by the proposal, plan, or other computation.

(d) *Substitution of microfilm.* Copies made by microfilming, photocopying, or similar methods may be substituted for the original records.

(e) *Access to records* —(1) *Records of grantees and subgrantees.* The awarding agency and the Comptroller General of the United States, or any of their authorized representatives, shall have the right of access to any pertinent books, documents, papers, or other records of grantees and subgrantees which are pertinent to the grant, in order to make audits, examinations, excerpts, and transcripts.

(2) *Expiration of right of access.* The rights of access in this section must not be limited to the required retention period but shall last as long as the records are retained.

(f) *Restrictions on public access.* The Federal Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) does not apply to records Unless required by Federal, State, or local law, grantees and subgrantees are not required to permit public access to their records.

## **§ 85.43 Enforcement.**

[!\[\]\(faf942dc3e59ce8eb64b4ac481eca7e0\_img.jpg\) top](#)

(a) *Remedies for noncompliance.* If a grantee or subgrantee materially fails to comply with any term of an award, whether stated in a Federal statute or regulation, an assurance, in a State plan or application, a notice of award, or elsewhere, the awarding agency may take one or more of the following actions, as appropriate in the circumstances:

(1) Temporarily withhold cash payments pending correction of the deficiency by the grantee or subgrantee or more severe enforcement action by the awarding agency,

(2) Disallow (that is, deny both use of funds and matching credit for) all or part of the cost of the activity or action not in compliance,

(3) Wholly or partly suspend or terminate the current award for the grantee's or subgrantee's program,

(4) Withhold further awards for the program, or

(5) Take other remedies that may be legally available.



(b) *Hearings, appeals.* In taking an enforcement action, the awarding agency will provide the grantee or subgrantee an opportunity for such hearing, appeal, or other administrative proceeding to which the grantee or subgrantee is entitled under any statute or regulation applicable to the action involved.

(c) *Effects of suspension and termination.* Costs of grantee or subgrantee resulting from obligations incurred by the grantee or subgrantee during a suspension or after termination of an award are not allowable unless the awarding agency expressly authorizes them in the notice of suspension or termination or subsequently. Other grantee or subgrantee costs during suspension or after termination which are necessary and not reasonably avoidable are allowable if:

(1) The costs result from obligations which were properly incurred by the grantee or subgrantee before the effective date of suspension or termination, are not in anticipation of it, and, in the case of a termination, are noncancellable, and,

(2) The costs would be allowable if the award were not suspended or expired normally at the end of the funding period in which the termination takes effect.

(d) *Relationship to debarment and suspension.* The enforcement remedies identified in this section, including suspension and termination, do not preclude a grantee or subgrantee from being subject to 2 CFR part 2424 (see §85.35).

[53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 72 FR 73493, Dec. 27, 2007]

#### **§ 85.44 Termination for convenience.**

 [top](#)

Except as provided in §85.43 awards may be terminated in whole or in part only as follows:

(a) By the awarding agency with the consent of the grantee or subgrantee in which case the two parties shall agree upon the termination conditions, including the effective date and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated, or

(b) By the grantee or subgrantee upon written notification to the awarding agency, setting forth the reasons for such termination, the effective date, and in the case of partial termination, the portion to be terminated. However, if, in the case of a partial termination, the awarding agency determines that the remaining portion of the award will not accomplish the purposes for which the award was made, the awarding agency may terminate the award in its entirety under either §85.43 or paragraph (a) of this section.

#### **Subpart D—After-the-Grant Requirements**

 [top](#)

#### **§ 85.50 Closeout.**

 [top](#)

(a) *General.* The Federal agency will close out the award when it determines that all applicable administrative actions and all required work of the grant has been completed.

(b) *Reports.* Within 90 days after the expiration or termination of the grant, the grantee must submit all financial, performance, and other reports required as a condition of the grant. Upon request by the grantee, Federal agencies may extend this timeframe. These may include but are not limited to:

(1) *Final performance or progress report.*



(2) The Federal financial report form, as well as other forms prescribed by the program.

(3) *Invention disclosure (if applicable).*

(4) *Federally-owned property report:*

In accordance with §85.32(f), a grantee must submit an inventory of all federally owned property (as distinct from property acquired with grant funds) for which it is accountable and request disposition instructions from the Federal agency of property no longer needed.

(c) *Cost adjustment.* The Federal agency will, within 90 days after receipt of reports in paragraph (b) of this section, make upward or downward adjustments to the allowable costs.

(d) *Cash adjustments.* (1) The Federal agency will make prompt payment to the grantee for allowable reimbursable costs.

(2) The grantee must immediately refund to the Federal agency any balance of unobligated (unencumbered) cash advanced that is not authorized to be retained for use on other grants.

[53 FR 8068, 8087, Mar. 11, 1988, as amended at 75 FR 41091, July 15, 2010]

#### **§ 85.51 Later disallowances and adjustments.**

 [top](#)

The closeout of a grant does not affect:

(a) The Federal agency's right to disallow costs and recover funds on the basis of a later audit or other review;

(b) The grantee's obligation to return any funds due as a result of later refunds, corrections, or other transactions;

(c) Records retention as required in §85.42;

(d) Property management requirements in §§85.31 and 85.32; and

(e) Audit requirements in §85.26.

#### **§ 85.52 Collection of amounts due.**

 [top](#)

(a) Any funds paid to a grantee in excess of the amount to which the grantee is finally determined to be entitled under the terms of the award constitute a debt to the Federal Government. If not paid within a reasonable period after demand, the Federal agency may reduce the debt by:

(1) Making an administrative offset against other requests for reimbursements,

(2) Withholding advance payments otherwise due to the grantee, or

(3) Other action permitted by law.



(b) Except where otherwise provided by statutes or regulations, the Federal agency will charge interest on an overdue debt in accordance with the Federal Claims Collection Standards (4 CFR Ch. II). The date from which interest is computed is not extended by litigation or the filing of any form of appeal.

#### **Subpart E—Entitlement [Reserved]**

 [top](#)



**Item: III**  
**OMB Circular A-87**  
**(Cost Principles)**







**OMB CIRCULAR A-87 (REVISED 05/10/04)**

CIRCULAR NO. A-87

Revised

**TO THE HEADS OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND ESTABLISHMENTS**

**SUBJECT:** Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments

1. Purpose. This Circular establishes principles and standards for determining costs for Federal awards carried out through grants, cost reimbursement contracts, and other agreements with State and local governments and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments (governmental units).
2. Authority. This Circular is issued under the authority of the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, as amended; the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950, as amended; the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990; Reorganization Plan No. 2 of 1970; and Executive Order No. 11541 ("Prescribing the Duties of the Office of Management and Budget and the Domestic Policy Council in the Executive Office of the President").
3. Background. As part of the governmentwide grant streamlining effort under P.L. 106-107, *Federal Financial Award Management Improvement Act of 1999*, OMB led an interagency workgroup to simplify and make consistent, to the extent feasible, the various rules used to award Federal grants. An interagency task force was established in 2001 to review existing cost principles for Federal awards to State, local, and Indian tribal governments; Colleges and Universities; and Non-Profit organizations. The task force studied Selected Items of Cost in each of the three cost principles to determine which items of costs could be stated consistently and/or more clearly. A proposed revised Circular reflecting the results of those efforts was issued on August 12, 2002 at 67 FR 52558. Extensive comments on the proposed revisions, discussions with interest groups, and related developments were considered in developing this revision.
4. Rescissions. This Circular rescinds and supersedes Circular A-87, as amended, issued May 4, 1995.
5. Policy. This Circular establishes principles and standards to provide a uniform approach for determining costs and to promote effective program delivery, efficiency, and better relationships between governmental units and the Federal Government. The principles are for determining allowable costs only. They are not intended to identify the circumstances or to dictate the extent of Federal and governmental unit participation in the financing of a particular Federal award. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this Circular.
6. Definitions. Definitions of key terms used in this Circular are contained in Attachment A, Section B.
7. Required Action. Agencies responsible for administering programs that involve cost



reimbursement contracts, grants, and other agreements with governmental units shall issue regulations to implement the provisions of this Circular and its Attachments.

8. OMB Responsibilities. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) will review agency regulations and implementation of this Circular, and will provide policy interpretations and assistance to insure effective and efficient implementation. Any exceptions will be subject to approval by OMB. Exceptions will only be made in particular cases where adequate justification is presented.

9. Information Contact. Further information concerning this Circular may be obtained by contacting the Office of Federal Financial Management, Financial Standards and Reporting Branch, Office of Management and Budget, Washington, DC 20503, telephone 202-395-3993.

10. Policy Review Date. OMB Circular A-87 will have a policy review three years from the date of issuance.

11. Effective Date. This Circular is effective as follows:

- Except as otherwise provided herein, these rules are effective June 9, 2004.

---

OMB CIRCULAR NO. A-87

COST PRINCIPLES FOR STATE, LOCAL AND INDIAN TRIBAL GOVERNMENTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Attachment A - General Principles for Determining Allowable Costs

Attachment B - Selected Items of Cost

Attachment C - State/Local-Wide Central Service Cost Allocation Plans

Attachment D - Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

Attachment E - State and Local Indirect Cost Rate Proposals

---

ATTACHMENT A

Circular No. A-87

GENERAL PRINCIPLES FOR DETERMINING ALLOWABLE COSTS

TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. Purpose and Scope



1. Objectives

2. Policy guides

3. Application

- B. Definitions

1. Approval or authorization of the awarding or cognizant Federal agency

2. Award

3. Awarding agency

4. Central service cost allocation plan

5. Claim

6. Cognizant agency

7. Common rule

8. Contract

9. Cost

10. Cost allocation plan

11. Cost objective

12. Federally-recognized Indian tribal government

13. Governmental unit

14. Grantee department or agency

15. Indirect cost rate proposal

16. Local government

17. Public assistance cost allocation plan

18. State

- C. Basic Guidelines

1. Factors affecting allowability of costs



2. Reasonable costs

3. Allocable costs

4. Applicable credits

D. Composition of Cost

1. Total cost

2. Classification of costs

E. Direct Costs

1. General

2. Application

3. Minor items

F. Indirect Costs

1. General

2. Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals

3. Limitation on indirect or administrative costs

G. Interagency Services

H. Required Certifications

A. Purpose and Scope

1. Objectives. This Attachment establishes principles for determining the allowable costs incurred by State, local, and federally-recognized Indian tribal governments (governmental units) under grants, cost reimbursement contracts, and other agreements with the Federal Government (collectively referred to in this Circular as "Federal awards"). The principles are for the purpose of cost determination and are not intended to identify the circumstances or dictate the extent of Federal or governmental unit participation in the financing of a particular program or project. The principles are designed to provide that Federal awards bear their fair share of cost recognized under these principles except where restricted or prohibited by law. Provision for profit or other increment above cost is outside the scope of this Circular.

2. Policy guides.

a. The application of these principles is based on the fundamental premises that:



(1) Governmental units are responsible for the efficient and effective administration of Federal awards through the application of sound management practices.

(2) Governmental units assume responsibility for administering Federal funds in a manner consistent with underlying agreements, program objectives, and the terms and conditions of the Federal award.

(3) Each governmental unit, in recognition of its own unique combination of staff, facilities, and experience, will have the primary responsibility for employing whatever form of organization and management techniques may be necessary to assure proper and efficient administration of Federal awards.

b. Federal agencies should work with States or localities which wish to test alternative mechanisms for paying costs for administering Federal programs. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) encourages Federal agencies to test fee-for-service alternatives as a replacement for current cost-reimbursement payment methods in response to the National Performance Review's (NPR) recommendation. The NPR recommended the fee-for-service approach to reduce the burden associated with maintaining systems for charging administrative costs to Federal programs and preparing and approving cost allocation plans. This approach should also increase incentives for administrative efficiencies and improve outcomes.

### 3. Application.

a. These principles will be applied by all Federal agencies in determining costs incurred by governmental units under Federal awards (including subawards) except those with (1) publicly-financed educational institutions subject to OMB Circular A-21, "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions," and (2) programs administered by publicly-owned hospitals and other providers of medical care that are subject to requirements promulgated by the sponsoring Federal agencies. However, this Circular does apply to all central service and department/agency costs that are allocated or billed to those educational institutions, hospitals, and other providers of medical care or services by other State and local government departments and agencies.

b. All subawards are subject to those Federal cost principles applicable to the particular organization concerned. Thus, if a subaward is to a governmental unit (other than a college, university or hospital), this Circular shall apply; if a subaward is to a commercial organization, the cost principles applicable to commercial organizations shall apply; if a subaward is to a college or university, Circular A-21 shall apply; if a subaward is to a hospital, the cost principles used by the Federal awarding agency for awards to hospitals shall apply, subject to the provisions of subsection A.3.a. of this Attachment; if a subaward is to some other non-profit organization, Circular A-122, "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations," shall apply.

c. These principles shall be used as a guide in the pricing of fixed price arrangements where costs are used in determining the appropriate price.

d. Where a Federal contract awarded to a governmental unit incorporates a Cost Accounting Standards (CAS) clause, the requirements of that clause shall apply. In such cases, the



governmental unit and the cognizant Federal agency shall establish an appropriate advance agreement on how the governmental unit will comply with applicable CAS requirements when estimating, accumulating and reporting costs under CAS-covered contracts. The agreement shall indicate that OMB Circular A-87 requirements will be applied to other Federal awards. In all cases, only one set of records needs to be maintained by the governmental unit.

e. Conditional exemptions.

- (1) OMB authorizes conditional exemption from OMB administrative requirements and cost principles circulars for certain Federal programs with statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding, that are identified by a Federal agency and approved by the head of the Executive department or establishment. A Federal agency shall consult with OMB during its consideration of whether to grant such an exemption.
- (2) To promote efficiency in State and local program administration, when Federal non-entitlement programs with common purposes have specific statutorily-authorized consolidated planning and consolidated administrative funding and where most of the State agency's resources come from non-Federal sources, Federal agencies may exempt these covered State-administered, non-entitlement grant programs from certain OMB grants management requirements. The exemptions would be from all but the allocability of costs provisions of OMB Circulars A-87 (Attachment A, subsection C.3), "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments," A-21 (Section C, subpart 4), "Cost Principles for Educational Institutions," and A-122 (Attachment A, subsection A.4), "Cost Principles for Non-Profit Organizations," and from all of the administrative requirements provisions of OMB Circular A-110, "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Agreements with Institutions of Higher Education, Hospitals, and Other Non-Profit Organizations," and the agencies' grants management common rule.
- (3) When a Federal agency provides this flexibility, as a prerequisite to a State's exercising this option, a State must adopt its own written fiscal and administrative requirements for expending and accounting for all funds, which are consistent with the provisions of OMB Circular A-87, and extend such policies to all subrecipients. These fiscal and administrative requirements must be sufficiently specific to ensure that: funds are used in compliance with all applicable Federal statutory and regulatory provisions, costs are reasonable and necessary for operating these programs, and funds are not be used for general expenses required to carry out other responsibilities of a State or its subrecipients.

**B. Definitions**

1. "Approval or authorization of the awarding or cognizant Federal agency" means documentation evidencing consent prior to incurring a specific cost. If such costs are specifically identified in a Federal award document, approval of the document constitutes approval of the costs. If the costs are covered by a State/local-wide cost allocation plan or an indirect cost proposal, approval of the plan constitutes the approval.
2. "Award" means grants, cost reimbursement contracts and other agreements between a State,



local and Indian tribal government and the Federal Government.

3. "Awarding agency" means (a) with respect to a grant, cooperative agreement, or cost reimbursement contract, the Federal agency, and (b) with respect to a subaward, the party that awarded the subaward.
4. "Central service cost allocation plan" means the documentation identifying, accumulating, and allocating or developing billing rates based on the allowable costs of services provided by a governmental unit on a centralized basis to its departments and agencies. The costs of these services may be allocated or billed to users.
5. "Claim" means a written demand or written assertion by the governmental unit or grantor seeking, as a matter of right, the payment of money in a sum certain, the adjustment or interpretation of award terms, or other relief arising under or relating to the award. A voucher, invoice or other routine request for payment that is not a dispute when submitted is not a claim. Appeals, such as those filed by a governmental unit in response to questioned audit costs, are not considered claims until a final management decision is made by the Federal awarding agency.
6. "Cognizant agency" means the Federal agency responsible for reviewing, negotiating, and approving cost allocation plans or indirect cost proposals developed under this Circular on behalf of all Federal agencies. OMB publishes a listing of cognizant agencies.
7. "Common Rule" means the "Uniform Administrative Requirements for Grants and Cooperative Agreements to State and Local Governments; Final Rule" originally issued at 53 FR 8034-8103 (March 11, 1988). Other common rules will be referred to by their specific titles.
8. "Contract" means a mutually binding legal relationship obligating the seller to furnish the supplies or services (including construction) and the buyer to pay for them. It includes all types of commitments that obligate the government to an expenditure of appropriated funds and that, except as otherwise authorized, are in writing. In addition to bilateral instruments, contracts include (but are not limited to): awards and notices of awards; job orders or task orders issued under basic ordering agreements; letter contracts; orders, such as purchase orders, under which the contract becomes effective by written acceptance or performance; and, bilateral contract modifications. Contracts do not include grants and cooperative agreements covered by 31 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.
9. "Cost" means an amount as determined on a cash, accrual, or other basis acceptable to the Federal awarding or cognizant agency. It does not include transfers to a general or similar fund.
10. "Cost allocation plan" means central service cost allocation plan, public assistance cost allocation plan, and indirect cost rate proposal. Each of these terms are further defined in this section.
11. "Cost objective" means a function, organizational subdivision, contract, grant, or other activity for which cost data are needed and for which costs are incurred.



12. "Federally recognized Indian tribal government" means the governing body or a governmental agency of any Indian tribe, band, nation, or other organized group or community (including any native village as defined in Section 3 of the Alaska Native Claims Settlement Act, 85 Stat. 688) certified by the Secretary of the Interior as eligible for the special programs and services provided through the Bureau of Indian Affairs.

13. "Governmental unit" means the entire State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government, including any component thereof. Components of governmental units may function independently of the governmental unit in accordance with the term of the award.

14. "Grantee department or agency" means the component of a State, local, or federally-recognized Indian tribal government which is responsible for the performance or administration of all or some part of a Federal award.

15. "Indirect cost rate proposal" means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or component thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate as described in Attachment E of this Circular.

16. "Local government" means a county, municipality, city, town, township, local public authority, school district, special district, intrastate district, council of governments (whether or not incorporated as a non-profit corporation under State law), any other regional or interstate government entity, or any agency or instrumentality of a local government.

17. "Public assistance cost allocation plan" means a narrative description of the procedures that will be used in identifying, measuring and allocating all administrative costs to all of the programs administered or supervised by State public assistance agencies as described in Attachment D of this Circular.

18. "State" means any of the several States of the United States, the District of Columbia, the Commonwealth of Puerto Rico, any territory or possession of the United States, or any agency or instrumentality of a State exclusive of local governments.

### C. Basic Guidelines

1. Factors affecting allowability of costs. To be allowable under Federal awards, costs must meet the following general criteria:

a. Be necessary and reasonable for proper and efficient performance and administration of Federal awards.

b. Be allocable to Federal awards under the provisions of this Circular.

c. Be authorized or not prohibited under State or local laws or regulations.

d. Conform to any limitations or exclusions set forth in these principles, Federal laws, terms and conditions of the Federal award, or other governing regulations as to types or amounts of cost items.



e. Be consistent with policies, regulations, and procedures that apply uniformly to both Federal awards and other activities of the governmental unit.

f. Be accorded consistent treatment. A cost may not be assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose in like circumstances has been allocated to the Federal award as an indirect cost.

g. Except as otherwise provided for in this Circular, be determined in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

h. Not be included as a cost or used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements of any other Federal award in either the current or a prior period, except as specifically provided by Federal law or regulation.

i. Be the net of all applicable credits.

j. Be adequately documented.

2. Reasonable costs. A cost is reasonable if, in its nature and amount, it does not exceed that which would be incurred by a prudent person under the circumstances prevailing at the time the decision was made to incur the cost. The question of reasonableness is particularly important when governmental units or components are predominately federally- funded. In determining reasonableness of a given cost, consideration shall be given to:

a. Whether the cost is of a type generally recognized as ordinary and necessary for the operation of the governmental unit or the performance of the Federal award.

b. The restraints or requirements imposed by such factors as: sound business practices; arms length bargaining; Federal, State and other laws and regulations; and, terms and conditions of the Federal award.

c. Market prices for comparable goods or services.

d. Whether the individuals concerned acted with prudence in the circumstances considering their responsibilities to the governmental unit, its employees, the public at large, and the Federal Government.

e. Significant deviations from the established practices of the governmental unit which may unjustifiably increase the Federal award's cost.

3. Allocable costs.

a. A cost is allocable to a particular cost objective if the goods or services involved are chargeable or assignable to such cost objective in accordance with relative benefits received.

b. All activities which benefit from the governmental unit's indirect cost, including unallowable activities and services donated to the governmental unit by third parties, will receive an



appropriate allocation of indirect costs.

c. Any cost allocable to a particular Federal award or cost objective under the principles provided for in this Circular may not be charged to other Federal awards to overcome fund deficiencies, to avoid restrictions imposed by law or terms of the Federal awards, or for other reasons.

d. Where an accumulation of indirect costs will ultimately result in charges to a Federal award, a cost allocation plan will be required as described in Attachments C, D, and E.

#### 4. Applicable credits.

a. Applicable credits refer to those receipts or reduction of expenditure-type transactions that offset or reduce expense items allocable to Federal awards as direct or indirect costs. Examples of such transactions are: purchase discounts, rebates or allowances, recoveries or indemnities on losses, insurance refunds or rebates, and adjustments of overpayments or erroneous charges. To the extent that such credits accruing to or received by the governmental unit relate to allowable costs, they shall be credited to the Federal award either as a cost reduction or cash refund, as appropriate.

b. In some instances, the amounts received from the Federal Government to finance activities or service operations of the governmental unit should be treated as applicable credits. Specifically, the concept of netting such credit items (including any amounts used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements) should be recognized in determining the rates or amounts to be charged to Federal awards. (See Attachment B, item 11, "Depreciation and use allowances," for areas of potential application in the matter of Federal financing of activities.)

#### D. Composition of Cost

1. Total cost. The total cost of Federal awards is comprised of the allowable direct cost of the program, plus its allocable portion of allowable indirect costs, less applicable credits.

2. Classification of costs. There is no universal rule for classifying certain costs as either direct or indirect under every accounting system. A cost may be direct with respect to some specific service or function, but indirect with respect to the Federal award or other final cost objective. Therefore, it is essential that each item of cost be treated consistently in like circumstances either as a direct or an indirect cost. Guidelines for determining direct and indirect costs charged to Federal awards are provided in the sections that follow.

#### E. Direct Costs

1. General. Direct costs are those that can be identified specifically with a particular final cost objective.

2. Application. Typical direct costs chargeable to Federal awards are:

a. Compensation of employees for the time devoted and identified specifically to the



performance of those awards.

b. Cost of materials acquired, consumed, or expended specifically for the purpose of those awards.

c. Equipment and other approved capital expenditures.

d. Travel expenses incurred specifically to carry out the award.

3. Minor items. Any direct cost of a minor amount may be treated as an indirect cost for reasons of practicality where such accounting treatment for that item of cost is consistently applied to all cost objectives.

#### **F. Indirect Costs**

1. General. Indirect costs are those: (a) incurred for a common or joint purpose benefiting more than one cost objective, and (b) not readily assignable to the cost objectives specifically benefitted, without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. The term "indirect costs," as used herein, applies to costs of this type originating in the grantee department, as well as those incurred by other departments in supplying goods, services, and facilities. To facilitate equitable distribution of indirect expenses to the cost objectives served, it may be necessary to establish a number of pools of indirect costs within a governmental unit department or in other agencies providing services to a governmental unit department. Indirect cost pools should be distributed to benefitted cost objectives on bases that will produce an equitable result in consideration of relative benefits derived.

2. Cost allocation plans and indirect cost proposals. Requirements for development and submission of cost allocation plans and indirect cost rate proposals are contained in Attachments C, D, and E.

3. Limitation on indirect or administrative costs.

a. In addition to restrictions contained in this Circular, there may be laws that further limit the amount of administrative or indirect cost allowed.

b. Amounts not recoverable as indirect costs or administrative costs under one Federal award may not be shifted to another Federal award, unless specifically authorized by Federal legislation or regulation.

G. Interagency Services. The cost of services provided by one agency to another within the governmental unit may include allowable direct costs of the service plus a pro rate share of indirect costs. A standard indirect cost allowance equal to ten percent of the direct salary and wage cost of providing the service (excluding overtime, shift premiums, and fringe benefits) may be used in lieu of determining the actual indirect costs of the service. These services do not include centralized services included in central service cost allocation plans as described in Attachment C.



**H. Required Certifications.** Each cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal required by Attachments C and E must comply with the following:

1. No proposal to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect cost rate, whether submitted to a Federal cognizant agency or maintained on file by the governmental unit, shall be acceptable unless such costs have been certified by the governmental unit using the Certificate of Cost Allocation Plan or Certificate of Indirect Costs as set forth in Attachments C and E. The certificate must be signed on behalf of the governmental unit by an individual at a level no lower than chief financial officer of the governmental unit that submits the proposal or component covered by the proposal.

2. No cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate shall be approved by the Federal Government unless the plan or rate proposal has been certified. Where it is necessary to establish a cost allocation plan or an indirect cost rate and the governmental unit has not submitted a certified proposal for establishing such a plan or rate in accordance with the requirements, the Federal Government may either disallow all indirect costs or unilaterally establish such a plan or rate. Such a plan or rate may be based upon audited historical data or such other data that have been furnished to the cognizant Federal agency and for which it can be demonstrated that all unallowable costs have been excluded. When a cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate is unilaterally established by the Federal Government because of failure of the governmental unit to submit a certified proposal, the plan or rate established will be set to ensure that potentially unallowable costs will not be reimbursed.



SELECTED ITEMS OF COST

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. Advertising and public relations costs
2. Advisory councils
3. Alcoholic beverages
4. Audit costs and related services
5. Bad debts
6. Bonding costs
7. Communication costs
8. Compensation for personal services
9. Contingency provisions
10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, and claims
11. Depreciation and use allowances
12. Donations and contributions
13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs
14. Entertainment costs
15. Equipment and other capital expenditures
16. Fines and penalties
17. Fund raising and investment management costs
18. Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable property and other capital assets and substantial relocation of Federal programs
19. General government expenses



20. Goods or services for personal use
21. Idle facilities and idle capacity
22. Insurance and indemnification
23. Interest
24. Lobbying
25. Maintenance, operations, and repairs
26. Materials and supplies costs
27. Meetings and conferences
28. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs
29. Patent costs
30. Plant and homeland security costs
31. Pre-award costs
32. Professional service costs
33. Proposal costs
34. Publication and printing costs
35. Rearrangement and alteration costs
36. Reconversion costs
37. Rental costs of building and equipment
38. Royalties and other costs for the use of patents
39. Selling and marketing
40. Taxes
41. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements
42. Training costs
43. Travel costs.



Sections 1 through 43 provide principles to be applied in establishing the allowability or unallowability of certain items of cost. These principles apply whether a cost is treated as direct or indirect. A cost is allowable for Federal reimbursement only to the extent of benefits received by Federal awards and its conformance with the general policies and principles stated in Attachment A to this Circular. Failure to mention a particular item of cost in these sections is not intended to imply that it is either allowable or unallowable; rather, determination of allowability in each case should be based on the treatment or standards provided for similar or related items of cost.

1. Advertising and public relations costs.

a. The term advertising costs means the costs of advertising media and corollary administrative costs.

Advertising media include magazines, newspapers, radio and television, direct mail, exhibits, electronic or computer transmittals, and the like.

b. The term public relations includes community relations and means those activities dedicated to maintaining the image of the governmental unit or maintaining or promoting understanding and favorable relations with the community or public at large or any segment of the public.

c. The only allowable advertising costs are those which are solely for:

(1) The recruitment of personnel required for the performance by the governmental unit of obligations arising under a Federal award ;

(2) The procurement of goods and services for the performance of a Federal award;

(3) The disposal of scrap or surplus materials acquired in the performance of a Federal award except when governmental units are reimbursed for disposal costs at a predetermined amount; or

(4) Other specific purposes necessary to meet the requirements of the Federal award.

d. The only allowable public relations costs are:

(1) Costs specifically required by the Federal award;

(2) Costs of communicating with the public and press pertaining to specific activities or accomplishments which result from performance of Federal awards (these costs are considered necessary as part of the outreach effort for the Federal award); or

(3) Costs of conducting general liaison with news media and government public relations officers, to the extent that such activities are limited to communication and liaison necessary keep the public informed on matters of public concern, such as notices of Federal contract/grant awards, financial matters, etc.



e. Costs identified in subsections c and d if incurred for more than one Federal award or for both sponsored work and other work of the governmental unit, are allowable to the extent that the principles in Attachment A, sections E. ("Direct Costs") and F. ("Indirect Costs") are observed.

f. Unallowable advertising and public relations costs include the following:

(1) All advertising and public relations costs other than as specified in subsections c, d, and e;

(2) Costs of meetings, conventions, convocations, or other events related to other activities of the governmental unit, including:

~~(a) Costs of displays, demonstrations, and exhibits;~~

(b) Costs of meeting rooms, hospitality suites, and other special facilities used in conjunction with shows and other special events; and

(c) Salaries and wages of employees engaged in setting up and displaying exhibits, making demonstrations, and providing briefings;

(3) Costs of promotional items and memorabilia, including models, gifts, and souvenirs;

(4) Costs of advertising and public relations designed solely to promote the governmental unit.

2. Advisory councils. Costs incurred by advisory councils or committees are allowable as a direct cost where authorized by the Federal awarding agency or as an indirect cost where allocable to Federal awards.

3. Alcoholic beverages. Costs of alcoholic beverages are unallowable.

4. Audit costs and related services.

a. The costs of audits required by , and performed in accordance with, the Single Audit Act, as implemented by Circular A-133, "Audits of States, Local Governments, and Non-Profit Organizations" are allowable. Also see 31 USC 7505(b) and section 230 ("Audit Costs") of Circular A-133.

b. Other audit costs are allowable if included in a cost allocation plan or indirect cost proposal, or if specifically approved by the awarding agency as a direct cost to an award

c. The cost of agreed-upon procedures engagements to monitor subrecipients who are exempted from A-133 under section 200(d) are allowable, subject to the conditions listed in A-133, section 230 (b)(2).

5. Bad debts. Bad debts, including losses (whether actual or estimated) arising from uncollectable accounts and other claims, related collection costs, and related legal costs, are



unallowable.

6. Bonding costs.

a. Bonding costs arise when the Federal Government requires assurance against financial loss to itself or others by reason of the act or default of the governmental unit. They arise also in instances where the governmental unit requires similar assurance. Included are such bonds as bid, performance, payment, advance payment, infringement, and fidelity bonds.

b. Costs of bonding required pursuant to the terms of the award are allowable.

c. Costs of bonding required by the governmental unit in the general conduct of its operations are allowable to the extent that such bonding is in accordance with sound business practice and the rates and premiums are reasonable under the circumstances.

7. Communication costs. Costs incurred for telephone services, local and long distance telephone calls, telegrams, postage, messenger, electronic or computer transmittal services and the like are allowable.

8. Compensation for personal services.

a. General. Compensation for personnel services includes all remuneration, paid currently or accrued, for services rendered during the period of performance under Federal awards, including but not necessarily limited to wages, salaries, and fringe benefits. The costs of such compensation are allowable to the extent that they satisfy the specific requirements of this Circular, and that the total compensation for individual employees:

(1) Is reasonable for the services rendered and conforms to the established policy of the governmental unit consistently applied to both Federal and non-Federal activities;

(2) Follows an appointment made in accordance with a governmental unit's laws and rules and meets merit system or other requirements required by Federal law, where applicable; and

(3) Is determined and supported as provided in subsection h.

b. Reasonableness. Compensation for employees engaged in work on Federal awards will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is consistent with that paid for similar work in other activities of the governmental unit. In cases where the kinds of employees required for Federal awards are not found in the other activities of the governmental unit, compensation will be considered reasonable to the extent that it is comparable to that paid for similar work in the labor

market in which the employing government competes for the kind of employees involved. Compensation surveys providing data representative of the labor market involved will be an acceptable basis for evaluating reasonableness.



c. **Unallowable costs.** Costs which are unallowable under other sections of these principles shall not be allowable under this section solely on the basis that they constitute personnel compensation.

d. **Fringe benefits.**

(1) Fringe benefits are allowances and services provided by employers to their employees as compensation in addition to regular salaries and wages. Fringe benefits include, but are not limited to, the costs of leave, employee insurance, pensions, and unemployment benefit plans. Except as provided elsewhere in these principles, the costs of fringe benefits are allowable to the extent that the benefits are reasonable and are required by law, governmental unit-employee agreement, or an established policy of the governmental unit.

(2) The cost of fringe benefits in the form of regular compensation paid to employees during periods of authorized absences from the job, such as for annual leave, sick leave, holidays, court leave, military leave, and other similar benefits, are allowable if: (a) they are provided under established written leave policies; (b) the costs are equitably allocated to all related activities, including Federal awards; and, (c) the accounting basis (cash or accrual) selected for costing each type of leave is consistently followed by the governmental unit.

(3) When a governmental unit uses the cash basis of accounting, the cost of leave is recognized in the period that the leave is taken and paid for. Payments for unused leave when an employee retires or terminates employment are allowable in the year of payment provided they are allocated as a general administrative expense to all activities of the governmental unit or component.

(4) The accrual basis may be only used for those types of leave for which a liability as defined by Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP) exists when the leave is earned. When a governmental unit uses the accrual basis of accounting, in accordance with GAAP, allowable leave costs are the lesser of the amount accrued or funded.

(5) The cost of fringe benefits in the form of employer contributions or expenses for social security; employee life, health, unemployment, and worker's compensation insurance (except as indicated in section 22, Insurance and indemnification); pension plan costs (see subsection e.); and other similar benefits are allowable, provided such benefits are granted under established written policies. Such benefits, whether treated as indirect costs or as direct costs, shall be allocated to Federal awards and all other activities in a manner consistent with the pattern of benefits attributable to the individuals or group(s) of employees whose salaries and wages are chargeable to such Federal awards and other activities.

e. **Pension plan costs.** Pension plan costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the governmental unit.

(1) For pension plans financed on a pay-as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.



(2) Pension costs calculated using an actuarial cost-based method recognized by GAAP are allowable for a given fiscal year if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursement and the governmental unit's contribution to the pension fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal Government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the pension fund.

(3) Amounts funded by the governmental unit in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the governmental unit's contribution in future periods.

(4) When a governmental unit converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method, as defined by GAAP, and funds pension costs in accordance with this method, the unfunded liability at the time of conversion shall be allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP.

(5) The Federal Government shall receive an equitable share of any previously allowed pension costs (including earnings thereon) which revert or inure to the governmental unit in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

f. Post-retirement health benefits. Post-retirement health benefits (PRHB) refers to costs of health insurance or health services not included in a pension plan covered by subsection e. for retirees and their spouses, dependents, and survivors. PRHB costs may be computed using a pay-as-you-go method or an acceptable actuarial cost method in accordance with established written policies of the governmental unit.

(1) For PRHB financed on a pay as-you-go method, allowable costs will be limited to those representing actual payments to retirees or their beneficiaries.

(2) PRHB costs calculated using an actuarial cost method recognized by GAAP are allowable if they are funded for that year within six months after the end of that year. Costs funded after the six month period (or a later period agreed to by the cognizant agency) are allowable in the year funded. The cognizant agency may agree to an extension of the six month period if an appropriate adjustment is made to compensate for the timing of the charges to the Federal Government and related Federal reimbursements and the governmental unit's contributions to the PRHB fund. Adjustments may be made by cash refund, reduction in current year's PRHB costs, or other equitable procedures to compensate the Federal Government for the time value of Federal reimbursements in excess of contributions to the PRHB fund.

(3) Amounts funded in excess of the actuarially determined amount for a fiscal year may be used as the government's contribution in a future period.

(4) When a governmental unit converts to an acceptable actuarial cost method and funds PRHB costs in accordance with this method, the initial unfunded liability attributable to prior years



shall be allowable if amortized over a period of years in accordance with GAAP, or, if no such GAAP period exists, over a period negotiated with the cognizant agency.

(5) To be allowable in the current year, the PRHB costs must be paid either to:

(a) An insurer or other benefit provider as current year costs or premiums, or

(b) An insurer or trustee to maintain a trust fund or reserve for the sole purpose of providing post-retirement benefits to retirees and other beneficiaries.

(6) The Federal Government shall receive an equitable share of any amounts of previously allowed post-retirement benefit costs ~~(including earnings thereon)~~ which revert or inure to the governmental unit in the form of a refund, withdrawal, or other credit.

g. Severance pay.

(1) Payments in addition to regular salaries and wages made to workers whose employment is being terminated are allowable to the extent that, in each case, they are required by (a) law, (b) employer-employee agreement, or (c) established written policy.

(2) Severance payments (but not accruals) associated with normal turnover are allowable. Such payments shall be allocated to all activities of the governmental unit as an indirect cost.

(3) Abnormal or mass severance pay will be considered on a case-by-case basis and is allowable only if approved by the cognizant Federal agency.

h. Support of salaries and wages. These standards regarding time distribution are in addition to the standards for payroll documentation.

(1) Charges to Federal awards for salaries and wages, whether treated as direct or indirect costs, will be based on payrolls documented in accordance with generally accepted practice of the governmental unit and approved by a responsible official(s) of the governmental unit.

(2) No further documentation is required for the salaries and wages of employees who work in a single indirect cost activity.

(3) Where employees are expected to work solely on a single Federal award or cost objective, charges for their salaries and wages will be supported by periodic certifications that the employees worked solely on that program for the period covered by the certification. These certifications will be prepared at least semi-annually and will be signed by the employee or supervisory official having first hand knowledge of the work performed by the employee.

(4) Where employees work on multiple activities or cost objectives, a distribution of their salaries or wages will be supported by personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation which meets the standards in subsection (5) unless a statistical sampling system (see subsection (6)) or other substitute system has been approved by the cognizant Federal agency. Such documentary support will be required where employees work on:



- (a) More than one Federal award,
  - (b) A Federal award and a non-Federal award,
  - (c) An indirect cost activity and a direct cost activity,
  - (d) Two or more indirect activities which are allocated using different allocation bases, or
  - (e) An unallowable activity and a direct or indirect cost activity.
- (5) Personnel activity reports or equivalent documentation must meet the following standards:
- (a) They must reflect an after-the-fact distribution of the actual activity of each employee,
  - (b) They must account for the total activity for which each employee is compensated,
  - (c) They must be prepared at least monthly and must coincide with one or more pay periods, and
  - (d) They must be signed by the employee.
  - (e) Budget estimates or other distribution percentages determined before the services are performed do not qualify as support for charges to Federal awards but may be used for interim accounting purposes, provided that:
    - (i) The governmental unit's system for establishing the estimates produces reasonable approximations of the activity actually performed;
    - (ii) At least quarterly, comparisons of actual costs to budgeted distributions based on the monthly activity reports are made. Costs charged to Federal awards to reflect adjustments made as a result of the activity actually performed may be recorded annually if the quarterly comparisons show the differences between budgeted and actual costs are less than ten percent; and
    - (iii) The budget estimates or other distribution percentages are revised at least quarterly, if necessary, to reflect changed circumstances.
- (6) Substitute systems for allocating salaries and wages to Federal awards may be used in place of activity reports. These systems are subject to approval if required by the cognizant agency. Such systems may include, but are not limited to, random moment sampling, case counts, or other quantifiable measures of employee effort.
- (a) Substitute systems which use sampling methods (primarily for Temporary Assistance to Needy Families (TANF), Medicaid, and other public assistance programs) must meet acceptable statistical sampling standards including:
    - (i) The sampling universe must include all of the employees whose salaries and wages are to be allocated based on sample results except as provided in subsection (c);



(ii) The entire time period involved must be covered by the sample; and

(iii) The results must be statistically valid and applied to the period being sampled.

(b) Allocating charges for the sampled employees' supervisors, clerical and support staffs, based on the results of the sampled employees, will be acceptable.

(c) Less than full compliance with the statistical sampling standards noted in subsection (a) may be accepted by the cognizant agency if it concludes that the amounts to be allocated to Federal awards will be minimal, or if it concludes that the system proposed by the governmental unit will result in lower costs to Federal awards than a system which complies with the standards.

(7) Salaries and wages of employees used in meeting cost sharing or matching requirements of Federal awards must be supported in the same manner as those claimed as allowable costs under Federal awards.

i. Donated services.

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to a governmental unit by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the provisions of the Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the governmental unit's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs.

(3) To the extent feasible, donated services will be supported by the same methods used by the governmental unit to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

9. Contingency provisions. Contributions to a contingency reserve or any similar provision made for events the occurrence of which cannot be foretold with certainty as to time, intensity, or with an assurance of their happening, are unallowable. The term "contingency reserve" excludes self-insurance reserves (see Attachment B, section 22.c.), pension plan reserves (see Attachment B, section 8.e.), and post-retirement health and other benefit reserves (see Attachment B, section 8.f.) computed using acceptable actuarial cost methods.

10. Defense and prosecution of criminal and civil proceedings, and claims.

a. The following costs are unallowable for contracts covered by 10 U.S.C. 2324(k), "Allowable costs under defense contracts."

(1) Costs incurred in defense of any civil or criminal fraud proceeding or similar proceeding (including filing of false certification brought by the United States where the contractor is found liable or has pleaded nolo contendere to a charge of fraud or similar proceeding (including filing



of a false certification).

(2) Costs incurred by a contractor in connection with any criminal, civil or administrative proceedings commenced by the United States or a State to the extent provided in 10 U.S.C. 2324(k).

b. Legal expenses required in the administration of Federal programs are allowable. Legal expenses for prosecution of claims against the Federal Government are unallowable.

#### 11. Depreciation and use allowances.

a. Depreciation and use allowances are means of allocating the cost of fixed assets to periods benefiting from asset use. Compensation for the use of fixed assets on hand may be made through depreciation or use allowances. A combination of the two methods may not be used in connection with a single class of fixed assets (e.g., buildings, office equipment, computer equipment, etc.) except as provided for in subsection g. Except for enterprise funds and internal service funds that are included as part of a State/local cost allocation plan, classes of assets shall be determined on the same basis used for the government-wide financial statements.

b. The computation of depreciation or use allowances shall be based on the acquisition cost of the assets involved. Where actual cost records have not been maintained, a reasonable estimate of the original acquisition cost may be used. The value of an asset donated to the governmental unit by an unrelated third party shall be its fair market value at the time of donation. Governmental or quasi-governmental organizations located within the same State shall not be considered unrelated third parties for this purpose.

c. The computation of depreciation or use allowances will exclude:

- (1) The cost of land;
- (2) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment borne by or donated by the Federal Government irrespective of where title was originally vested or where it presently resides; and
- (3) Any portion of the cost of buildings and equipment contributed by or for the governmental unit, or a related donor organization, in satisfaction of a matching requirement.

d. Where the depreciation method is followed, the period of useful service (useful life) established in each case for usable capital assets must take into consideration such factors as type of construction, nature of the equipment used, historical usage patterns, technological developments, and the renewal and replacement policies of the governmental unit followed for the individual items or classes of assets involved. In the absence of clear evidence indicating that the expected consumption of the asset will be significantly greater in the early portions than in the later portions of its useful life, the straight line method of depreciation shall be used.

Depreciation methods once used shall not be changed unless approved by the Federal cognizant or awarding agency. When the depreciation method is introduced for application to an asset



previously subject to a use allowance, the annual depreciation charge thereon may not exceed the amount that would have resulted had the depreciation method been in effect from the date of acquisition of the asset. The combination of use allowances and depreciation applicable to the asset shall not exceed the total acquisition cost of the asset or fair market value at time of donation.

e. When the depreciation method is used for buildings, a building's shell may be segregated from the major component of the building (e.g., plumbing system, heating, and air conditioning system, etc.) and each major component depreciated over its estimated useful life, or the entire building (i.e., the shell and all components) may be treated as a single asset and depreciated over a single useful life.

f. Where the use allowance method is followed, the use allowance for buildings and improvements (including land improvements, such as paved parking areas, fences, and sidewalks) will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding two percent of acquisition costs. The use allowance for equipment will be computed at an annual rate not exceeding  $6 \frac{2}{3}$  percent of acquisition cost. When the use allowance method is used for buildings, the entire building must be treated as a single asset; the building's components (e.g., plumbing system, heating and air condition, etc.) cannot be segregated from the building's shell.

The two percent limitation, however, need not be applied to equipment which is merely attached or fastened to the building but not permanently fixed to it and which is used as furnishings or decorations or for specialized purposes (e.g., dentist chairs and dental treatment units, counters, laboratory benches bolted to the floor, dishwashers, modular furniture, carpeting, etc.). Such equipment will be considered as not being permanently fixed to the building if it can be removed without the destruction of, or need for costly or extensive alterations or repairs, to the building or the equipment. Equipment that meets these criteria will be subject to the  $6 \frac{2}{3}$  percent equipment use allowance limitation.

g. A reasonable use allowance may be negotiated for any assets that are considered to be fully depreciated, after taking into consideration the amount of depreciation previously charged to the government, the estimated useful life remaining at the time of negotiation, the effect of any increased maintenance charges, decreased efficiency due to age, and any other factors pertinent to the utilization of the asset for the purpose contemplated.

h. Charges for use allowances or depreciation must be supported by adequate property records. Physical inventories must be taken at least once every two years (a statistical sampling approach is acceptable) to ensure that assets exist, and are in use. Governmental units will manage equipment in accordance with State laws and procedures. When the depreciation method is followed, depreciation records indicating the amount of depreciation taken each period must also be maintained.

## 12. Donations and contributions.

a. Contributions or donations rendered. Contributions or donations, including cash, property, and services, made by the governmental unit, regardless of the recipient, are unallowable.



b. Donated services received:

(1) Donated or volunteer services may be furnished to a governmental unit by professional and technical personnel, consultants, and other skilled and unskilled labor. The value of these services is not reimbursable either as a direct or indirect cost. However, the value of donated services may be used to meet cost sharing or matching requirements in accordance with the Federal Grants Management Common Rule.

(2) The value of donated services utilized in the performance of a direct cost activity shall, when material in amount, be considered in the determination of the governmental unit's indirect costs or rate(s) and, accordingly, shall be allocated a proportionate share of applicable indirect costs.

(3) To the extent feasible, donated services will be supported by the same methods used by the governmental unit to support the allocability of regular personnel services.

13. Employee morale, health, and welfare costs.

a. The costs of employee information publications, health or first-aid clinics and/or infirmaries, recreational activities, employee counseling services, and any other expenses incurred in accordance with the governmental unit's established practice or custom for the improvement of working conditions, employer-employee relations, employee morale, and employee performance are allowable.

b. Such costs will be equitably apportioned to all activities of the governmental unit. Income generated from any of these activities will be offset against expenses.

14. Entertainment. Costs of entertainment, including amusement, diversion, and social activities and any costs directly associated with such costs (such as tickets to shows or sports events, meals, lodging, rentals, transportation, and gratuities) are unallowable.

15. Equipment and other capital expenditures.

a. For purposes of this subsection 15, the following definitions apply:

(1) "Capital Expenditures" means expenditures for the acquisition cost of capital assets (equipment, buildings, land), or expenditures to make improvements to capital assets that materially increase their value or useful life. Acquisition cost means the cost of the asset including the cost to put it in place. Acquisition cost for equipment, for example, means the net invoice price of the equipment, including the cost of any modifications, attachments, accessories, or auxiliary apparatus necessary to make it usable for the purpose for which it is acquired. Ancillary charges, such as taxes, duty, protective in transit insurance, freight, and installation may be included in, or excluded from the acquisition cost in accordance with the governmental



unit's regular accounting practices.

(2) "Equipment" means an article of nonexpendable, tangible personal property having a useful life of more than one year and an acquisition cost which equals or exceeds the lesser of the capitalization level established by the governmental unit for financial statement purposes, or \$5000.

(3) "Special purpose equipment" means equipment which is used only for research, medical, scientific, or other technical activities. Examples of special purpose equipment include microscopes, x-ray machines, surgical instruments, and spectrometers.

(4) "General purpose equipment" means equipment, which is not limited to research, medical, scientific or other technical activities. Examples include office equipment and furnishings, modular offices, telephone networks, information technology equipment and systems, air conditioning equipment, reproduction and printing equipment, and motor vehicles.

b. The following rules of allowability shall apply to equipment and other capital expenditures:

(1) Capital expenditures for general purpose equipment, buildings, and land are unallowable as direct charges, except where approved in advance by the awarding agency.

(2) Capital expenditures for special purpose equipment are allowable as direct costs, provided that items with a unit cost of \$5000 or more have the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(3) Capital expenditures for improvements to land, buildings, or equipment which materially increase their value or useful life are unallowable as a direct cost except with the prior approval of the awarding agency.

(4) When approved as a direct charge pursuant to Attachment B, section 15.b (1), (2), and (3) above, capital expenditures will be charged in the period in which the expenditure is incurred, or as otherwise determined appropriate and negotiated with the awarding agency. In addition, Federal awarding agencies are authorized at their option to waive or delegate the prior approval requirement.

(5) Equipment and other capital expenditures are unallowable as indirect costs. However, see section 11, Depreciation and use allowance, for rules on the allowability of use allowances or depreciation on buildings, capital improvements, and equipment. Also, see section 37, Rental costs, concerning the allowability of rental costs for land, buildings, and equipment.

(6) The unamortized portion of any equipment written off as a result of a change in capitalization levels may be recovered by continuing to claim the otherwise allowable use allowances or depreciation on the equipment, or by amortizing the amount to be written off over a period of years negotiated with the cognizant agency.

(7) When replacing equipment purchased in whole or in part with Federal funds, the governmental unit may use the equipment to be replaced as a trade-in or sell the property and use



the proceeds to offset the cost of the replacement property.

16. Fines and penalties. Fines, penalties, damages, and other settlements resulting from violations (or alleged violations) of, or failure of the governmental unit to comply with, Federal, State, local, or Indian tribal laws and regulations are unallowable except when incurred as a result of compliance with specific provisions of the Federal award or written instructions by the awarding agency authorizing in advance such payments.

17. Fund raising and investment management costs.

a. Costs of organized fund raising, including financial campaigns, solicitation of gifts and bequests, and similar expenses incurred to raise capital or obtain contributions are unallowable, regardless of the purpose for which the funds will be used.

b. Costs of investment counsel and staff and similar expenses incurred to enhance income from investments are unallowable. However, such costs associated with investments covering pension, self-insurance, or other funds which include Federal participation allowed by this Circular are allowable.

c. Fund raising and investment activities shall be allocated an appropriate share of indirect costs under the conditions described in subsection C.3.b. of Attachment A.

18. Gains and losses on disposition of depreciable property and other capital assets and substantial relocation of Federal programs.

a. (1) Gains and losses on the sale, retirement, or other disposition of depreciable property shall be included in the year in which they occur as credits or charges to the asset cost grouping(s) in which the property was included. The amount of the gain or loss to be included as a credit or charge to the appropriate asset cost grouping(s) shall be the difference between the amount realized on the property and the undepreciated basis of the property.

(2) Gains and losses on the disposition of depreciable property shall not be recognized as a separate credit or charge under the following conditions:

(a) The gain or loss is processed through a depreciation account and is reflected in the depreciation allowable under sections 11 and 15.

(b) The property is given in exchange as part of the purchase price of a similar item and the gain or loss is taken into account in determining the depreciation cost basis of the new item.

(c) A loss results from the failure to maintain permissible insurance, except as otherwise provided in subsection 22.d.

(d) Compensation for the use of the property was provided through use allowances in lieu of depreciation.

b. Substantial relocation of Federal awards from a facility where the Federal Government



participated in the financing to another facility prior to the expiration of the useful life of the financed facility requires Federal agency approval. The extent of the relocation, the amount of the Federal participation in the financing, and the depreciation charged to date may require negotiation of space charges for Federal awards.

c. Gains or losses of any nature arising from the sale or exchange of property other than the property covered in subsection a., e.g., land or included in the fair market value used in any adjustment resulting from a relocation of Federal awards covered in subsection b. shall be excluded in computing Federal award costs.

**19. General government expenses.**

a. The general costs of government are unallowable (except as provided in Attachment B, section 43, Travel costs). These include:

(1) Salaries and expenses of the Office of the Governor of a State or the chief executive of a political subdivision or the chief executive of federally-recognized Indian tribal government;

(2) Salaries and other expenses of a State legislature, tribal council, or similar local governmental body, such as a county supervisor, city council, school board, etc., whether incurred for purposes of legislation or executive direction;

(3) Costs of the judiciary branch of a government;

(4) Costs of prosecutorial activities unless treated as a direct cost to a specific program if authorized by program statute or regulation (however, this does not preclude the allowability of other legal activities of the Attorney General); and

(5) Costs of other general types of government services normally provided to the general public, such as fire and police, unless provided for as a direct cost under a program statute or regulation.

b. For federally-recognized Indian tribal governments and Councils Of Governments (COGs), the portion of salaries and expenses directly attributable to managing and operating Federal programs by the chief executive and his staff is allowable

**20. Goods or services for personal use.** Costs of goods or services for personal use of the governmental unit's employees are unallowable regardless of whether the cost is reported as taxable income to the employees.

**21. Idle facilities and idle capacity.**

a. As used in this section the following terms have the meanings set forth below:

(1) "Facilities" means land and buildings or any portion thereof, equipment individually or collectively, or any other tangible capital asset, wherever located, and whether owned or leased by the governmental unit.



(2) "Idle facilities" means completely unused facilities that are excess to the governmental unit's current needs.

(3) "Idle capacity" means the unused capacity of partially used facilities. It is the difference between: (a) that which a facility could achieve under 100 percent operating time on a one-shift basis less operating interruptions resulting from time lost for repairs, setups, unsatisfactory materials, and other normal delays; and (b) the extent to which the facility was actually used to meet demands during the accounting period. A multi-shift basis should be used if it can be shown that this amount of usage would normally be expected for the type of facility involved.

(4) "Cost of idle facilities or idle capacity" means costs such as maintenance, repair, housing, rent, and other related costs, e.g., insurance, interest, property taxes and depreciation or use allowances.

b. The costs of idle facilities are unallowable except to the extent that:

(1) They are necessary to meet fluctuations in workload; or

(2) Although not necessary to meet fluctuations in workload, they were necessary when acquired and are now idle because of changes in program requirements, efforts to achieve more economical operations, reorganization, termination, or other causes which could not have been reasonably foreseen. Under the exception stated in this subsection, costs of idle facilities are allowable for a reasonable period of time, ordinarily not to exceed one year, depending on the initiative taken to use, lease, or dispose of such facilities.

c. The costs of idle capacity are normal costs of doing business and are a factor in the normal fluctuations of usage or indirect cost rates from period to period. Such costs are allowable, provided that the capacity is reasonably anticipated to be necessary or was originally reasonable and is not subject to reduction or elimination by use on other Federal awards, subletting, renting, or sale, in accordance with sound business, economic, or security practices. Widespread idle capacity throughout an entire facility or among a group of assets having substantially the same function may be considered idle facilities.

## 22. Insurance and indemnification.

a. Costs of insurance required or approved and maintained, pursuant to the Federal award, are allowable.

b. Costs of other insurance in connection with the general conduct of activities are allowable subject to the following limitations:

(1) Types and extent and cost of coverage are in accordance with the governmental unit's policy and sound business practice.

(2) Costs of insurance or of contributions to any reserve covering the risk of loss of, or damage



to, Federal Government property are unallowable except to the extent that the awarding agency has specifically required or approved such costs.

c. Actual losses which could have been covered by permissible insurance (through a self-insurance program or otherwise) are unallowable, unless expressly provided for in the Federal award or as described below. However, the Federal Government will participate in actual losses of a self insurance fund that are in excess of reserves. Costs incurred because of losses not covered under nominal deductible insurance coverage provided in keeping with sound management practice, and minor losses not covered by insurance, such as spoilage, breakage, and disappearance of small hand tools, which occur in the ordinary course of operations, are allowable.

d. Contributions to a reserve for certain self-insurance programs including workers compensation, unemployment compensation, and severance pay are allowable subject to the following provisions:

(1) The type of coverage and the extent of coverage and the rates and premiums would have been allowed had insurance (including reinsurance) been purchased to cover the risks. However, provision for known or reasonably estimated self-insured liabilities, which do not become payable for more than one year after the provision is made, shall not exceed the discounted present value of the liability. The rate used for discounting the liability must be determined by giving consideration to such factors as the governmental unit's settlement rate for those liabilities and its investment rate of return.

(2) Earnings or investment income on reserves must be credited to those reserves.

(3) Contributions to reserves must be based on sound actuarial principles using historical experience and reasonable assumptions. Reserve levels must be analyzed and updated at least biennially for each major risk being insured and take into account any reinsurance, coinsurance, etc. Reserve levels related to employee-related coverages will normally be limited to the value of claims (a) submitted and adjudicated but not paid, (b) submitted but not adjudicated, and (c) incurred but not submitted. Reserve levels in excess of the amounts based on the above must be identified and justified in the cost allocation plan or indirect cost rate proposal.

(4) Accounting records, actuarial studies, and cost allocations (or billings) must recognize any significant differences due to types of insured risk and losses generated by the various insured activities or agencies of the governmental unit. If individual departments or agencies of the governmental unit experience significantly different levels of claims for a particular risk, those differences are to be recognized by the use of separate allocations or other techniques resulting in an equitable allocation.

(5) Whenever funds are transferred from a self-insurance reserve to other accounts (e.g., general fund), refunds shall be made to the Federal Government for its share of funds transferred, including earned or imputed interest from the date of transfer.

e. Actual claims paid to or on behalf of employees or former employees for workers'



compensation, unemployment compensation, severance pay, and similar employee benefits (e.g., subsection 8.f. for post retirement health benefits), are allowable in the year of payment provided (1) the governmental unit follows a consistent costing policy and (2) they are allocated as a general administrative expense to all activities of the governmental unit.

f. Insurance refunds shall be credited against insurance costs in the year the refund is received.

g. Indemnification includes securing the governmental unit against liabilities to third persons and other losses not compensated by insurance or otherwise. The Federal Government is obligated to indemnify the governmental unit only to the extent expressly provided for in the Federal award, except as provided in subsection d.

~~h. Costs of commercial insurance that protects against the costs of the contractor for correction of the contractor's own defects in materials or workmanship are unallowable.~~

### 23. Interest.

a. Costs incurred for interest on borrowed capital or the use of a governmental unit's own funds, however represented, are unallowable except as specifically provided in subsection b. or authorized by Federal legislation.

b. Financing costs (including interest) paid or incurred which are associated with the otherwise allowable costs of building acquisition, construction, or fabrication, reconstruction or remodeling completed on or after October 1, 1980 is allowable subject to the conditions in (1) through (4) of this section 23.b. Financing costs (including interest) paid or incurred on or after September 1, 1995 for land or associated with otherwise allowable costs of equipment is allowable, subject to the conditions in (1) through (4).

(1) The financing is provided (from other than tax or user fee sources) by a bona fide third party external to the governmental unit;

(2) The assets are used in support of Federal awards;

(3) Earnings on debt service reserve funds or interest earned on borrowed funds pending payment of the construction or acquisition costs are used to offset the current period's cost or the capitalized interest, as appropriate. Earnings subject to being reported to the Federal Internal Revenue Service under arbitrage requirements are excludable.

(4) For debt arrangements over \$1 million, unless the governmental unit makes an initial equity contribution to the asset purchase of 25 percent or more, the governmental unit shall reduce claims for interest cost by an amount equal to imputed interest earnings on excess cash flow, which is to be calculated as follows. Annually, non-Federal entities shall prepare a cumulative (from the inception of the project) report of monthly cash flows that includes inflows and outflows, regardless of the funding source. Inflows consist of depreciation expense, amortization of capitalized construction interest, and annual interest cost. For cash flow calculations, the annual inflow figures shall be divided by the number of months in the year



(i.e., usually 12) that the building is in service for monthly amounts. Outflows consist of initial equity contributions, debt principal payments (less the pro rata share attributable to the unallowable costs of land) and interest payments. Where cumulative inflows exceed cumulative outflows, interest shall be calculated on the excess inflows for that period and be treated as a reduction to allowable interest cost. The rate of interest to be used to compute earnings on excess cash flows shall be the three-month Treasury bill closing rate as of the last business day of that month.

(5) Interest attributable to fully depreciated assets is unallowable.

24. Lobbying.

a. General. The cost of certain influencing activities associated with obtaining grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, or loans is an unallowable cost. Lobbying with respect to certain grants, contracts, cooperative agreements, and loans shall be governed by the common rule, "New Restrictions on Lobbying" published at 55 FR 6736 (February 26, 1990), including definitions, and the Office of Management and Budget "Government-wide Guidance for New Restrictions on Lobbying" and notices published at 54 FR 52306 (December 20, 1989), 55 FR 24540 (June 15, 1990), and 57 FR 1772 (January 15, 1992), respectively.

b. Executive lobbying costs. Costs incurred in attempting to improperly influence either directly or indirectly, an employee or officer of the Executive Branch of the Federal Government to give consideration or to act regarding a sponsored agreement or a regulatory matter are unallowable. Improper influence means any influence that induces or tends to induce a Federal employee or officer to give consideration or to act regarding a federally-sponsored agreement or regulatory matter on any basis other than the merits of the matter.

25. Maintenance, operations, and repairs. Unless prohibited by law, the cost of utilities, insurance, security, janitorial services, elevator service, upkeep of grounds, necessary maintenance, normal repairs and alterations, and the like are allowable to the extent that they: (1) keep property (including Federal property, unless otherwise provided for) in an efficient operating condition, (2) do not add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life, and (3) are not otherwise included in rental or other charges for space. Costs which add to the permanent value of property or appreciably prolong its intended life shall be treated as capital expenditures (see sections 11 and 15).

26. Materials and supplies costs.

a. Costs incurred for materials, supplies, and fabricated parts necessary to carry out a Federal award are allowable.

b. Purchased materials and supplies shall be charged at their actual prices, net of applicable credits. Withdrawals from general stores or stockrooms should be charged at their actual net cost under any recognized method of pricing inventory withdrawals, consistently applied. Incoming transportation charges are a proper part of materials and supplies costs.



c. Only materials and supplies actually used for the performance of a Federal award may be charged as direct costs.

d. Where federally-donated or furnished materials are used in performing the Federal award, such materials will be used without charge.

27. Meetings and conferences. Costs of meetings and conferences, the primary purpose of which is the dissemination of technical information, are allowable. This includes costs of meals, transportation, rental of facilities, speakers' fees, and other items incidental to such meetings or conferences. But see Attachment B, section 14, Entertainment costs.

28. Memberships, subscriptions, and professional activity costs.

a. Costs of the governmental unit's memberships in business, technical, and professional organizations are allowable.

b. Costs of the governmental unit's subscriptions to business, professional, and technical periodicals are allowable.

c. Costs of membership in civic and community, social organizations are allowable as a direct cost with the approval of the Federal awarding agency.

d. Costs of membership in organizations substantially engaged in lobbying are unallowable.

29. Patent costs.

a. The following costs relating to patent and copyright matters are allowable: (i) cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents required by the Federal award and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make such disclosures; (ii) cost of preparing documents and any other patent costs in connection with the filing and prosecution of a United States patent application where title or royalty-free license is required by the Federal Government to be conveyed to the Federal Government; and (iii) general counseling services relating to patent and copyright matters, such as advice on patent and copyright laws, regulations, clauses, and employee agreements (but see Attachment B, sections 32, Professional service costs, and 38, Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights).

b. The following costs related to patent and copyright matter are unallowable:

(i) Cost of preparing disclosures, reports, and other documents and of searching the art to the extent necessary to make disclosures not required by the award

(ii) Costs in connection with filing and prosecuting any foreign patent application, or (ii) any United States patent application, where the Federal award does not require conveying title or a royalty-free license to the Federal Government (but see Attachment B, section 38., Royalties and other costs for use of patents and copyrights).



30. Plant and homeland security costs. Necessary and reasonable expenses incurred for routine and homeland security to protect facilities, personnel, and work products are allowable. Such costs include, but are not limited to, wages and uniforms of personnel engaged in security activities; equipment; barriers; contractual security services; consultants; etc. Capital expenditures for homeland and plant security purposes are subject to section 15., Equipment and other capital expenditures, of this Circular.

31. Pre-award costs. Pre-award costs are those incurred prior to the effective date of the award directly pursuant to the negotiation and in anticipation of the award where such costs are necessary to comply with the proposed delivery schedule or period of performance. Such costs are allowable only to the extent that they would have been allowable if incurred after the date of the award and only with the written approval of the awarding agency.

32. Professional service costs.

a. Costs of professional and consultant services rendered by persons who are members of a particular profession or possess a special skill, and who are not officers or employees of the governmental unit, are allowable, subject to subparagraphs b and c when reasonable in relation to the services rendered and when not contingent upon recovery of the costs from the Federal Government.

In addition, legal and related services are limited under Attachment B, section 10.

b. In determining the allowability of costs in a particular case, no single factor or any special combination of factors is necessarily determinative. However, the following factors are relevant:

- (1) The nature and scope of the service rendered in relation to the service required.
- (2) The necessity of contracting for the service, considering the governmental unit's capability in the particular area.
- (3) The past pattern of such costs, particularly in the years prior to Federal awards.
- (4) The impact of Federal awards on the governmental unit's business (i.e., what new problems have arisen).
- (5) Whether the proportion of Federal work to the governmental unit's total business is such as to influence the governmental unit in favor of incurring the cost, particularly where the services rendered are not of a continuing nature and have little relationship to work under Federal grants and contracts.
- (6) Whether the service can be performed more economically by direct employment rather than contracting.
- (7) The qualifications of the individual or concern rendering the service and the customary fees charged, especially on non-Federal awards.



(8) Adequacy of the contractual agreement for the service (e.g., description of the service, estimate of time required, rate of compensation, and termination provisions).

c. In addition to the factors in subparagraph b, retainer fees to be allowable must be supported by available or rendered evidence of bona fide services available or rendered.

**33. Proposal costs.** Costs of preparing proposals for potential Federal awards are allowable. Proposal costs should normally be treated as indirect costs and should be allocated to all activities of the governmental unit utilizing the cost allocation plan and indirect cost rate proposal. However, proposal costs may be charged directly to Federal awards with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

**34. Publication and printing costs.**

a. Publication costs include the costs of printing (including the processes of composition, plate-making, press work, binding, and the end products produced by such processes), distribution, promotion, mailing, and general handling. Publication costs also include page charges in professional publications.

b. If these costs are not identifiable with a particular cost objective, they should be allocated as indirect costs to all benefiting activities of the governmental unit.

c. Page charges for professional journal publications are allowable as a necessary part of research costs where:

(1) The research papers report work supported by the Federal Government: and

(2) The charges are levied impartially on all research papers published by the journal, whether or not by federally-sponsored authors

**35. Rearrangement and alteration costs.** Costs incurred for ordinary and normal rearrangement and alteration of facilities are allowable. Special arrangements and alterations costs incurred specifically for a Federal award are allowable with the prior approval of the Federal awarding agency.

**36. Reconversion costs.** Costs incurred in the restoration or rehabilitation of the governmental unit's facilities to approximately the same condition existing immediately prior to commencement of Federal awards, less costs related to normal wear and tear, are allowable.

**37. Rental costs of buildings and equipment.**

a. Subject to the limitations described in subsections b. through d. of this section, rental costs are allowable to the extent that the rates are reasonable in light of such factors as: rental costs of comparable property, if any; market conditions in the area; alternatives available; and, the type, life expectancy, condition, and value of the property leased. Rental arrangements should be



reviewed periodically to determine if circumstances have changed and other options are available.

b. Rental costs under "sale and lease back" arrangements are allowable only up to the amount that would be allowed had the governmental unit continued to own the property. This amount would include expenses such as depreciation or use allowance, maintenance, taxes, and insurance.

c. Rental costs under "less-than-arms-length" leases are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in Attachment B, section 37.b) that would be allowed had title to the property vested in the governmental unit. For this purpose, a less-than-arms-length lease is one under which one party to the lease agreement is able to control or substantially influence the actions of the other. Such leases include, but are not limited to those between (i) divisions of a governmental unit; (ii) governmental units under common control through common officers, directors, or members; and (iii) a governmental unit and a director, trustee, officer, or key employee of the governmental unit or his immediate family, either directly or through corporations, trusts, or similar arrangements in which they hold a controlling interest. For example, a governmental unit may establish a separate corporation for the sole purpose of owning property and leasing it back to the governmental unit.

d. Rental costs under leases which are required to be treated as capital leases under GAAP are allowable only up to the amount (as explained in subsection b) that would be allowed had the governmental unit purchased the property on the date the lease agreement was executed. The provisions of Financial Accounting Standards Board Statement 13, Accounting for Leases, shall be used to determine whether a lease is a capital lease. Interest costs related to capital leases are allowable to the extent they meet the criteria in Attachment B, section 23. Unallowable costs include amounts paid for profit, management fees, and taxes that would not have been incurred had the governmental unit purchased the facility.

38. Royalties and other costs for the use of patents.

a. Royalties on a patent or copyright or amortization of the cost of acquiring by purchase a copyright, patent, or rights thereto, necessary for the proper performance of the award are allowable unless:

- (1) The Federal Government has a license or the right to free use of the patent or copyright.
- (2) The patent or copyright has been adjudicated to be invalid, or has been administratively determined to be invalid.
- (3) The patent or copyright is considered to be unenforceable.
- (4) The patent or copyright is expired.

b. Special care should be exercised in determining reasonableness where the royalties may have



been arrived at as a result of less-than-arm's-length bargaining, e.g.:

- (1) Royalties paid to persons, including corporations, affiliated with the governmental unit.
- (2) Royalties paid to unaffiliated parties, including corporations, under an agreement entered into in contemplation that a Federal award would be made.
- (3) Royalties paid under an agreement entered into after an award is made to a governmental unit.

c. In any case involving a patent or copyright formerly owned by the governmental unit, the amount of royalty allowed should not exceed the cost which would have been allowed had the governmental unit retained title thereto.

39. Selling and marketing. Costs of selling and marketing any products or services of the governmental unit are unallowable (unless allowed under Attachment B, section 1. as allowable public relations costs or under Attachment B, section 33. as allowable proposal costs.

40. Taxes.

a. Taxes that a governmental unit is legally required to pay are allowable, except for self-assessed taxes that disproportionately affect Federal programs or changes in tax policies that disproportionately affect Federal programs. This provision becomes effective for taxes paid during the governmental unit's first fiscal year that begins on or after January 1, 1998, and applies thereafter.

b. Gasoline taxes, motor vehicle fees, and other taxes that are in effect user fees for benefits provided to the Federal Government are allowable.

c. This provision does not restrict the authority of Federal agencies to identify taxes where Federal participation is inappropriate. Where the identification of the amount of unallowable taxes would require an inordinate amount of effort, the cognizant agency may accept a reasonable approximation thereof.

41. Termination costs applicable to sponsored agreements. Termination of awards generally gives rise to the incurrence of costs, or the need for special treatment of costs, which would not have arisen had the Federal award not been terminated. Cost principles covering these items are set forth below. They are to be used in conjunction with the other provisions of this Circular in termination situations.

a. The cost of items reasonably usable on the governmental unit's other work shall not be allowable unless the governmental unit submits evidence that it would not retain such items at cost without sustaining a loss. In deciding whether such items are reasonably usable on other work of the governmental unit, the awarding agency should consider the governmental unit's plans and orders for current and scheduled activity.



Contemporaneous purchases of common items by the governmental unit shall be regarded as evidence that such items are reasonably usable on the governmental unit's other work. Any acceptance of common items as allocable to the terminated portion of the Federal award shall be limited to the extent that the quantities of such items on hand, in transit, and on order are in excess of the reasonable quantitative requirements of other work.

b. If in a particular case, despite all reasonable efforts by the governmental unit, certain costs cannot be discontinued immediately after the effective date of termination, such costs are generally allowable within the limitations set forth in this Circular, except that any such costs continuing after termination due to the negligent or willful failure of the governmental unit to discontinue such costs shall be unallowable.

c. Loss of useful value of special tooling, machinery, and equipment is generally allowable if:

(1) Such special tooling, special machinery, or equipment is not reasonably capable of use in the other work of the governmental unit,

(2) The interest of the Federal Government is protected by transfer of title or by other means deemed appropriate by the awarding agency, and

(3) The loss of useful value for any one terminated Federal award is limited to that portion of the acquisition cost which bears the same ratio to the total acquisition cost as the terminated portion of the Federal award bears to the entire terminated Federal award and other Federal awards for which the special tooling, machinery, or equipment was acquired.

d. Rental costs under unexpired leases are generally allowable where clearly shown to have been reasonably necessary for the performance of the terminated Federal award less the residual value of such leases, if:

(1) the amount of such rental claimed does not exceed the reasonable use value of the property leased for the period of the Federal award and such further period as may be reasonable, and

(2) the governmental unit makes all reasonable efforts to terminate, assign, settle, or otherwise reduce the cost of such lease. There also may be included the cost of alterations of such leased property, provided such alterations were necessary for the performance of the Federal award, and of reasonable restoration required by the provisions of the lease.

e. Settlement expenses including the following are generally allowable:

(1) Accounting, legal, clerical, and similar costs reasonably necessary for:

(a) The preparation and presentation to the awarding agency of settlement claims and supporting data with respect to the terminated portion of the Federal award, unless the termination is for default (see Subpart \_\_.44 of the Grants Management Common Rule implementing OMB Circular A-102); and



(b) The termination and settlement of subawards.

(2) Reasonable costs for the storage, transportation, protection, and disposition of property provided by the Federal Government or acquired or produced for the Federal award, except when grantees or contractors are reimbursed for disposals at a predetermined amount in accordance with Subparts \_\_.31 and \_\_.32 of the Grants Management Common Rule implementing OMB Circular A-102.

f. Claims under subawards, including the allocable portion of claims which are common to the Federal award, and to other work of the governmental unit are generally allowable.

An appropriate share of the governmental unit's indirect expense may be allocated to the amount of settlements with subcontractors and/or subgrantees, provided that the amount allocated is otherwise consistent with the basic guidelines contained in Attachment A. The indirect expense so allocated shall exclude the same and similar costs claimed directly or indirectly as settlement expenses.

42. Training costs. The cost of training provided for employee development is allowable.

43. Travel costs.

a. General. Travel costs are the expenses for transportation, lodging, subsistence, and related items incurred by employees who are in travel status on official business of the governmental unit. Such costs may be charged on an actual cost basis, on a per diem or mileage basis in lieu of actual costs incurred, or on a combination of the two, provided the method used is applied to an entire trip and not to selected days of the trip, and results in charges consistent with those normally allowed in like circumstances in the governmental unit's non-federally-sponsored activities. Notwithstanding the provisions of Attachment B, section 19, General government expenses, travel costs of officials covered by that section are allowable with the prior approval of an awarding agency when they are specifically related to Federal awards.

b. Lodging and subsistence. Costs incurred by employees and officers for travel, including costs of lodging, other subsistence, and incidental expenses, shall be considered reasonable and allowable only to the extent such costs do not exceed charges normally allowed by the governmental unit in its regular operations as the result of the governmental unit's written travel policy. In the absence of an acceptable, written governmental unit policy regarding travel costs, the rates and amounts established under subchapter I of Chapter 57, Title 5, United States Code ("Travel and Subsistence Expenses; Mileage Allowances"), or by the Administrator of General Services, or by the President (or his or her designee) pursuant to any provisions of such subchapter shall apply to travel under Federal awards (48 CFR 31.205-46(a)).

c. Commercial air travel.



(1) Airfare costs in excess of the customary standard commercial airfare (coach or equivalent), Federal Government contract airfare (where authorized and available), or the lowest commercial discount airfare are unallowable except when such accommodations would:

- (a) require circuitous routing;
- (b) require travel during unreasonable hours;
- (c) excessively prolong travel;
- (d) result in additional costs that would offset the transportation savings; or
- (e) offer accommodations not reasonably adequate for the traveler's medical needs. The governmental unit must justify and document these conditions on a case-by-case basis in order for the use of first-class airfare to be allowable in such cases.

(2) Unless a pattern of avoidance is detected, the Federal Government will generally not question a governmental unit's determinations that customary standard airfare or other discount airfare is unavailable for specific trips if the governmental unit can demonstrate either of the following: (a) that such airfare was not available in the specific case; or (b) that it is the governmental unit's overall practice to make routine use of such airfare.

d. Air travel by other than commercial carrier. Costs of travel by governmental unit-owned, -leased, or -chartered aircraft include the cost of lease, charter, operation (including personnel costs), maintenance, depreciation, insurance, and other related costs. The portion of such costs that exceeds the cost of allowable commercial air travel, as provided for in subsection c., is unallowable.

e. Foreign travel. Direct charges for foreign travel costs are allowable only when the travel has received prior approval of the awarding agency. Each separate foreign trip must receive such approval. For purposes of this provision, "foreign travel" includes any travel outside Canada, Mexico, the United States, and any United States territories and possessions. However, the term "foreign travel" for a governmental unit located in a foreign country means travel outside that country.

---

ATTACHMENT C

Circular No. A-87

## STATE/LOCAL-WIDE CENTRAL SERVICE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

A. General

B. Definitions



1. Billed central services
2. Allocated central services
3. Agency or operating agency
- C. Scope of the Central Service Cost Allocation Plans
- D. Submission Requirements
- E. Documentation Requirements for Submitted Plans
  1. General
  2. Allocated central services
  3. Billed services
    - a. General
    - b. Internal service funds
    - c. Self-insurance funds
    - d. Fringe benefits
  4. Required certification
- F. Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans
- G. Other Policies
  1. Billed central service activities
  2. Working capital reserves
  3. Carry-forward adjustments of allocated central service costs
  4. Adjustments of billed central services
  5. Records retention
  6. Appeals
  7. OMB assistance
- A. General.



1. Most governmental units provide certain services, such as motor pools, computer centers, purchasing, accounting, etc., to operating agencies on a centralized basis. Since federally-supported awards are performed within the individual operating agencies, there needs to be a process whereby these central service costs can be identified and assigned to benefitted activities on a reasonable and consistent basis. The central service cost allocation plan provides that process. All costs and other data used to distribute the costs included in the plan should be supported by formal accounting and other records that will support the propriety of the costs assigned to Federal awards.

2. Guidelines and illustrations of central service cost allocation plans are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government." A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

#### **B. Definitions.**

1. "Billed central services" means central services that are billed to benefitted agencies and/or programs on an individual fee-for-service or similar basis. Typical examples of billed central services include computer services, transportation services, insurance, and fringe benefits.

2. "Allocated central services" means central services that benefit operating agencies but are not billed to the agencies on a fee-for-service or similar basis. These costs are allocated to benefitted agencies on some reasonable basis. Examples of such services might include general accounting, personnel administration, purchasing, etc.

3. "Agency or operating agency" means an organizational unit or sub-division within a governmental unit that is responsible for the performance or administration of awards or activities of the governmental unit.

**C. Scope of the Central Service Cost Allocation Plans.** The central service cost allocation plan will include all central service costs that will be claimed (either as a billed or an allocated cost) under Federal awards and will be documented as described in section E. Costs of central services omitted from the plan will not be reimbursed.

#### **D. Submission Requirements.**

1. Each State will submit a plan to the Department of Health and Human Services for each year in which it claims central service costs under Federal awards. The plan should include (a) a projection of the next year's allocated central service cost (based either on actual costs for the most recently completed year or the budget projection for the coming year), and (b) a reconciliation of actual allocated central service costs to the estimated costs used for either the most recently completed year or the year immediately preceding the most recently completed year.



2. Each local government that has been designated as a "major local government" by the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) is also required to submit a plan to its cognizant agency annually. OMB periodically lists major local governments in the Federal Register.

3. All other local governments claiming central service costs must develop a plan in accordance with the requirements described in this Circular and maintain the plan and related supporting documentation for audit. These local governments are not required to submit their plans for Federal approval unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency. Where a local government only receives funds as a sub-recipient, the primary recipient will be responsible for negotiating indirect cost rates and/or monitoring the sub-recipient's plan.

4. All central service cost allocation plans will be prepared and, when required, submitted within six months prior to the beginning of each of the governmental unit's fiscal years in which it proposes to claim central service costs. Extensions may be granted by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis.

**E. Documentation Requirements for Submitted Plans.** The documentation requirements described in this section may be modified, expanded, or reduced by the cognizant agency on a case-by-case basis. For example, the requirements may be reduced for those central services which have little or no impact on Federal awards. Conversely, if a review of a plan indicates that certain additional information is needed, and will likely be needed in future years, it may be routinely requested in future plan submissions. Items marked with an asterisk (\*) should be submitted only once; subsequent plans should merely indicate any changes since the last plan.

1. General. All proposed plans must be accompanied by the following: an organization chart sufficiently detailed to show operations including the central service activities of the State/local government whether or not they are shown as benefiting from central service functions; a copy of the Comprehensive Annual Financial Report (or a copy of the Executive Budget if budgeted costs are being proposed) to support the allowable costs of each central service activity included in the plan; and, a certification (see subsection 4.) that the plan was prepared in accordance with this Circular, contains only allowable costs, and was prepared in a manner that treated similar costs consistently among the various Federal awards and between Federal and non-Federal awards/activities.

2. Allocated central services. For each allocated central service, the plan must also include the following: a brief description of the service\*, an identification of the unit rendering the service and the operating agencies receiving the service, the items of expense included in the cost of the service, the method used to distribute the cost of the service to benefitted agencies, and a summary schedule showing the allocation of each service to the specific benefitted

agencies. If any self-insurance funds or fringe benefits costs are treated as allocated (rather than billed) central services, documentation discussed in subsections 3.b. and c. shall also be included.

3. Billed services.



a. General. The information described below shall be provided for all billed central services, including internal service funds, self-insurance funds, and fringe benefit funds.

b. Internal service funds.

(1) For each internal service fund or similar activity with an operating budget of \$5 million or more, the plan shall include: a brief description of each service; a balance sheet for each fund based on individual accounts contained in the governmental unit's accounting system; a revenue/expenses statement, with revenues broken out by source, e.g., regular billings, interest earned, etc.; a listing of all non-operating transfers (as defined by Generally Accepted Accounting Principles (GAAP)) into and out of the fund; a description of the procedures (methodology) used to charge the costs of each service to users, including how billing rates are determined; a schedule of current rates; and, a schedule comparing total revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service to the allowable costs of the service, as determined under this Circular, with an explanation of how variances will be handled.

(2) Revenues shall consist of all revenues generated by the service, including unbilled and uncollected revenues. If some users were not billed for the services (or were not billed at the full rate for that class of users), a schedule showing the full imputed revenues associated with these users shall be provided. Expenses shall be broken out by object cost categories (e.g., salaries, supplies, etc.).

c. Self-insurance funds. For each self-insurance fund, the plan shall include: the fund balance sheet; a statement of revenue and expenses including a summary of billings and claims paid by agency; a listing of all non-operating transfers into and out of the fund; the type(s) of risk(s) covered by the fund (e.g., automobile liability, workers' compensation, etc.); an explanation of how the level of fund contributions are determined, including a copy of the current actuarial report (with the actuarial assumptions used) if the contributions are determined on an actuarial basis; and, a description of the procedures used to charge or allocate fund contributions to benefitted activities. Reserve levels in excess of claims (1) submitted and adjudicated but not paid, (2) submitted but not adjudicated, and (3) incurred but not submitted must be identified and explained.

d. Fringe benefits. For fringe benefit costs, the plan shall include: a listing of fringe benefits provided to covered employees, and the overall annual cost of each type of benefit; current fringe benefit policies\*; and procedures used to charge or allocate the costs of the benefits to benefitted activities. In addition, for pension and post-retirement health insurance plans, the following information shall be provided: the governmental unit's funding policies, e.g., legislative bills, trust agreements, or State-mandated contribution rules, if different from actuarially determined rates; the pension plan's costs accrued for the year; the amount funded, and date(s) of funding; a copy of the current actuarial report (including the actuarial assumptions); the plan trustee's report; and, a schedule from the activity showing the value of the interest cost associated with late funding.

4. Required certification. Each central service cost allocation plan will be accompanied by a certification in the following form:



## CERTIFICATE OF COST ALLOCATION PLAN

This is to certify that I have reviewed the cost allocation plan submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish cost allocations or billings for [identify period covered by plan] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of OMB Circular A-87, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments," and the Federal award(s) to which they apply. Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.

(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the awards to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Official: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Execution: \_\_\_\_\_

### F. Negotiation and Approval of Central Service Plans.

1. All proposed central service cost allocation plans that are required to be submitted will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the Federal cognizant agency on a timely basis. The cognizant agency will review the proposal within six months of receipt of the proposal and either negotiate/approve the proposal or advise the governmental unit of the additional documentation needed to support/evaluate the proposed plan or the changes required to make the proposal acceptable. Once an agreement with the governmental unit has been reached, the agreement will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies, unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal funding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special consideration, the funding agency will, prior to the time the plans are negotiated, notify the cognizant agency.

2. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The results of the negotiation shall be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.



3. Negotiated cost allocation plans based on a proposal later found to have included costs that: (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in Attachment B of this Circular, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards, shall be adjusted, or a refund shall be made at the option of the Federal cognizant agency. These adjustments or refunds are designed to correct the plans and do not constitute a reopening of the negotiation.

**G. Other Policies.**

1. Billed central service activities. Each billed central service activity must separately account for all revenues (including imputed revenues) generated by the service, expenses incurred to furnish the service, and profit/loss.

2. Working capital reserves. Internal service funds are dependent upon a reasonable level of working capital reserve to operate from one billing cycle to the next. Charges by an internal service activity to provide for the establishment and maintenance of a reasonable level of working capital reserve, in addition to the full recovery of costs, are allowable. A working capital reserve as part of retained earnings of up to 60 days cash expenses for normal operating purposes is considered reasonable. A working capital reserve exceeding 60 days may be approved by the cognizant Federal agency in exceptional cases.

3. Carry-forward adjustments of allocated central service costs. Allocated central service costs are usually negotiated and approved for a future fiscal year on a "fixed with carry-forward" basis. Under this procedure, the fixed amounts for the future year covered by agreement are not subject to adjustment for that year. However, when the actual costs of the year involved become known, the differences between the fixed amounts previously approved and the actual costs will be carried forward and used as an adjustment to the fixed amounts established for a later year. This "carry-forward" procedure applies to all central services whose costs were fixed in the approved plan. However, a carry-forward adjustment is not permitted, for a central service activity that was not included in the approved plan, or for unallowable costs that must be reimbursed immediately.

4. Adjustments of billed central services. Billing rates used to charge Federal awards shall be based on the estimated costs of providing the services, including an estimate of the allocable central service costs. A comparison of the revenue generated by each billed service (including total revenues whether or not billed or collected) to the actual allowable costs of the service will be made at least annually, and an adjustment will be made for the difference between the revenue and the allowable costs. These adjustments will be made through one of the following adjustment methods: (a) a cash refund to the Federal Government for the Federal share of the adjustment, (b) credits to the amounts charged to the individual programs, (c) adjustments to future billing rates, or (d) adjustments to allocated central service costs. Adjustments to allocated central services will not be permitted where the total amount of the adjustment for a particular service (Federal share and non-Federal) share exceeds \$500,000.

5. Records retention. All central service cost allocation plans and related documentation used as a basis for claiming costs under Federal awards must be retained for audit in accordance with the



records retention requirements contained in the Common Rule.

6. Appeals. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.

7. OMB assistance. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

---

ATTACHMENT D

Circular No. A-87

## PUBLIC ASSISTANCE COST ALLOCATION PLANS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### A. General

#### B. Definitions

##### 1. State public assistance agency

##### 2. State public assistance agency costs

#### C. Policy

#### D. Submission, Documentation, and Approval of Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans

#### E. Review of Implementation of Approved Plans

#### F. Unallowable Costs

A. General. Federally-financed programs administered by State public assistance agencies are funded predominately by the Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). In support of its stewardship requirements, HHS has published requirements for the development, documentation, submission, negotiation, and approval of public assistance cost allocation plans in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. All administrative costs (direct and indirect) are normally charged to Federal awards by implementing the public assistance cost allocation plan. This Attachment extends these requirements to all Federal agencies whose programs are administered by a State public assistance agency. Major federally-financed programs typically administered by State public assistance agencies include: *Temporary Assistance to Needy Families (TANF)*, Medicaid, Food Stamps, Child Support Enforcement, Adoption Assistance and Foster Care, and Social Services Block Grant.

#### B. Definitions.



1. "State public assistance agency" means a State agency administering or supervising the administration of one or more public assistance programs operated by the State as identified in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. For the purpose of this Attachment, these programs include all programs administered by the State public assistance agency.

2. "State public assistance agency costs" means all costs incurred by, or allocable to, the State public assistance agency, except expenditures for financial assistance, medical vendor

payments, food stamps, and payments for services and goods provided directly to program recipients.

C. Policy. State public assistance agencies will develop, document and implement, and the Federal Government will review, negotiate, and approve, public assistance cost allocation plans in accordance with Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95. The plan will include all programs administered by the State public assistance agency. Where a letter of approval or disapproval is transmitted to a State public assistance agency in accordance with Subpart E, the letter will apply to all Federal agencies and programs. The remaining sections of this Attachment (except for the requirement for certification) summarize the provisions of Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

D. Submission, Documentation, and Approval of Public Assistance Cost Allocation Plans.

1. State public assistance agencies are required to promptly submit amendments to the cost allocation plan to HHS for review and approval.

2. Under the coordination process outlined in subsection E, affected Federal agencies will review all new plans and plan amendments and provide comments, as appropriate, to HHS. The effective date of the plan or plan amendment will be the first day of the quarter following the submission of the plan or amendment, unless another date is specifically approved by HHS. HHS, as the cognizant agency acting on behalf of all affected Federal agencies, will, as necessary, conduct negotiations with the State public assistance agency and will inform the State agency of the action taken on the plan or plan amendment.

E. Review of Implementation of Approved Plans.

1. Since public assistance cost allocation plans are of a narrative nature, the review during the plan approval process consists of evaluating the appropriateness of the proposed groupings of costs (cost centers) and the related allocation bases. As such, the Federal Government needs some assurance that the cost allocation plan has been implemented as approved. This is accomplished by reviews by the funding agencies, single audits, or audits conducted by the cognizant audit agency.

2. Where inappropriate charges affecting more than one funding agency are identified, the cognizant HHS cost negotiation office will be advised and will take the lead in resolving the issue(s) as provided for in Subpart E of 45 CFR Part 95.

3. If a dispute arises in the negotiation of a plan or from a disallowance involving two or more



funding agencies, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures set out in 45 CFR Part 75. Disputes involving only one funding agency will be resolved in accordance with the funding agency's appeal process.

4. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, the Office of Management and Budget will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.

F. Unallowable Costs. Claims developed under approved cost allocation plans will be based on allowable costs as identified in this Circular. Where unallowable costs have been claimed and reimbursed, they will be refunded to the program that reimbursed the unallowable cost using one of the following methods: (a) a cash refund, (b) offset to a subsequent claim, or (c) credits to the amounts charged to individual awards.

---

ATTACHMENT E

Circular No. A-87

## STATE AND LOCAL INDIRECT COST RATE PROPOSALS

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

#### A. General

#### B. Definitions

##### 1. Indirect cost rate proposal

##### 2. Indirect cost rate

##### 3. Indirect cost pool

##### 4. Base

##### 5. Predetermined rate

##### 6. Fixed rate

##### 7. Provisional rate

##### 8. Final rate

##### 9. Base period

#### C. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates

##### 1. General



2. Simplified method

3. Multiple allocation base method

4. Special indirect cost rates

**D. Submission and Documentation of Proposals**

1. Submission of indirect cost rate proposals

2. Documentation of proposals

3. Required certification

**E. Negotiation and Approval of Rates**

**F. Other Policies**

1. Fringe benefit rates

2. Billed services provided by the grantee agency

3. Indirect cost allocations not using rates

4. Appeals

5. Collections of unallowable costs and erroneous payments

6. OMB assistance

**A. General.**

1. Indirect costs are those that have been incurred for common or joint purposes. These costs benefit more than one cost objective and cannot be readily identified with a particular final cost objective without effort disproportionate to the results achieved. After direct costs have been determined and assigned directly to Federal awards and other activities as appropriate, indirect costs are those remaining to be allocated to benefitted cost objectives. A cost may not be allocated to a Federal award as an indirect cost if any other cost incurred for the same purpose, in like circumstances, has been assigned to a Federal award as a direct cost.

2. Indirect costs include (a) the indirect costs originating in each department or agency of the governmental unit carrying out Federal awards and (b) the costs of central governmental services distributed through the central service cost allocation plan (as described in Attachment C) and not otherwise treated as direct costs.

3. Indirect costs are normally charged to Federal awards by the use of an indirect cost rate. A separate indirect cost rate(s) is usually necessary for each department or agency of the



governmental unit claiming indirect costs under Federal awards. Guidelines and illustrations of indirect cost proposals are provided in a brochure published by the Department of Health and Human Services entitled "A Guide for State and Local Government Agencies: Cost Principles and Procedures for Establishing Cost Allocation Plans and Indirect Cost Rates for Grants and Contracts with the Federal Government." A copy of this brochure may be obtained from the Superintendent of Documents, U.S. Government Printing Office.

4. Because of the diverse characteristics and accounting practices of governmental units, the types of costs which may be classified as indirect costs cannot be specified in all situations. However, typical examples of indirect costs may include certain State/local-wide central service costs, general administration of the grantee department or agency, accounting and personnel services performed within the grantee department or agency, depreciation or use allowances on buildings and equipment, the costs of operating and maintaining facilities, etc.

5. This Attachment does not apply to State public assistance agencies. These agencies should refer instead to Attachment D.

#### **B. Definitions.**

1. "Indirect cost rate proposal" means the documentation prepared by a governmental unit or subdivision thereof to substantiate its request for the establishment of an indirect cost rate.

2. "Indirect cost rate" is a device for determining in a reasonable manner the proportion of indirect costs each program should bear. It is the ratio (expressed as a percentage) of the indirect costs to a direct cost base.

3. "Indirect cost pool" is the accumulated costs that jointly benefit two or more programs or other cost objectives.

4. "Base" means the accumulated direct costs (normally either total direct salaries and wages or total direct costs exclusive of any extraordinary or distorting expenditures) used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The direct cost base selected should result in each award bearing a fair share of the indirect costs in reasonable relation to the benefits received from the costs.

5. "Predetermined rate" means an indirect cost rate, applicable to a specified current or future period, usually the governmental unit's fiscal year. This rate is based on an estimate of the costs to be incurred during the period. Except under very unusual circumstances, a predetermined rate is not subject to adjustment. (Because of legal constraints, predetermined rates are not permitted for Federal contracts; they may, however, be used for grants or cooperative agreements.) Predetermined rates may not be used by governmental units that have not submitted and negotiated the rate with the cognizant agency. In view of the potential advantages offered by this procedure, negotiation of predetermined rates for indirect costs for a period of two to four years should be the norm in those situations where the cost experience and other pertinent facts available are deemed sufficient to enable the parties involved to reach an informed judgment as to the probable level of indirect costs during the ensuing accounting periods.



6. "Fixed rate" means an indirect cost rate which has the same characteristics as a predetermined rate, except that the difference between the estimated costs and the actual, allowable costs of the period covered by the rate is carried forward as an adjustment to the rate computation of a subsequent period.

7. "Provisional rate" means a temporary indirect cost rate applicable to a specified period which is used for funding, interim reimbursement, and reporting indirect costs on Federal awards pending the establishment of a "final" rate for that period.

8. "Final rate" means an indirect cost rate applicable to a specified past period which is based on the actual allowable costs of the period. A final audited rate is not subject to adjustment.

9. "Base period" for the allocation of indirect costs is the period in which such costs are incurred and accumulated for allocation to activities performed in that period. The base period normally should coincide with the governmental unit's fiscal year, but in any event, shall be so selected as to avoid inequities in the allocation of costs.

#### C. Allocation of Indirect Costs and Determination of Indirect Cost Rates.

##### 1. General.

a. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function, or where all its major functions benefit from the indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs and the computation of an indirect cost rate may be accomplished through simplified allocation procedures as described in subsection 2.

b. Where a governmental unit's department or agency has several major functions which benefit from its indirect costs in varying degrees, the allocation of indirect costs may require the accumulation of such costs into separate cost groupings which then are allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative degree of benefit. The indirect costs allocated to each function are then distributed to individual awards and other activities included in that function by means of an indirect cost rate(s).

c. Specific methods for allocating indirect costs and computing indirect cost rates along with the conditions under which each method should be used are described in subsections 2, 3 and 4.

##### 2. Simplified method.

a. Where a grantee agency's major functions benefit from its indirect costs to approximately the same degree, the allocation of indirect costs may be accomplished by (1) classifying the grantee agency's total costs for the base period as either direct or indirect, and (2) dividing the total allowable indirect costs (net of applicable credits) by an equitable distribution base. The result of this process is an indirect cost rate which is used to distribute indirect costs to individual Federal awards. The rate should be expressed as the percentage which the total amount of allowable indirect costs bears to the base selected. This method should also be used where a governmental unit's department or agency has only one major function encompassing a number of individual



projects or activities, and may be used where the level of Federal awards to that department or agency is relatively small.

b. Both the direct costs and the indirect costs shall exclude capital expenditures and unallowable costs. However, unallowable costs must be included in the direct costs if they represent activities to which indirect costs are properly allocable.

c. The distribution base may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items, such as pass-through funds, major subcontracts, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution.

### 3. Multiple allocation base method.

a. Where a grantee agency's indirect costs benefit its major functions in varying degrees, such costs shall be accumulated into separate cost groupings. Each grouping shall then be allocated individually to benefitted functions by means of a base which best measures the relative benefits.

b. The cost groupings should be established so as to permit the allocation of each grouping on the basis of benefits provided to the major functions. Each grouping should constitute a pool of expenses that are of like character in terms of the functions they benefit and in terms of the allocation base which best measures the relative benefits provided to each function. The number of separate groupings should be held within practical limits, taking into consideration the materiality of the amounts involved and the degree of precision needed.

c. Actual conditions must be taken into account in selecting the base to be used in allocating the expenses in each grouping to benefitted functions. When an allocation can be made by assignment of a cost grouping directly to the function benefitted, the allocation shall be made in that manner. When the expenses in a grouping are more general in nature, the allocation should be made through the use of a selected base which produces results that are equitable to both the Federal Government and the governmental unit. In general, any cost element or related factor associated with the governmental unit's activities is potentially adaptable for use as an allocation base provided that: (1) it can readily be expressed in terms of dollars or other quantitative measures (total direct costs, direct salaries and wages, staff hours applied, square feet used, hours of usage, number of documents processed, population served, and the like), and (2) it is common to the benefitted functions during the base period.

d. Except where a special indirect cost rate(s) is required in accordance with subsection 4, the separate groupings of indirect costs allocated to each major function shall be aggregated and treated as a common pool for that function. The costs in the common pool shall then be distributed to individual Federal awards included in that function by use of a single indirect cost rate.

e. The distribution base used in computing the indirect cost rate for each function may be (1) total direct costs (excluding capital expenditures and other distorting items such as pass-through funds, major subcontracts, etc.), (2) direct salaries and wages, or (3) another base which results in an equitable distribution. An indirect cost rate should be developed for each separate indirect



cost pool developed. The rate in each case should be stated as the percentage relationship between the particular indirect cost pool and the distribution base identified with that pool.

#### **4. Special indirect cost rates.**

a. In some instances, a single indirect cost rate for all activities of a grantee department or agency or for each major function of the agency may not be appropriate. It may not take into account those different factors which may substantially affect the indirect costs applicable to a particular program or group of programs. The factors may include the physical location of the work, the level of administrative support required, the nature of the facilities or other resources employed, the organizational arrangements used, or any combination thereof. When a particular award is carried out in an environment which appears to generate a significantly different level of indirect costs, provisions should be made for a separate indirect cost pool applicable to that award. The separate indirect cost pool should be developed during the course of the regular allocation process, and the separate indirect cost rate resulting therefrom should be used, provided that: (1) the rate differs significantly from the rate which would have been developed under subsections 2. and 3., and (2) the award to which the rate would apply is material in amount.

b. Although this Circular adopts the concept of the full allocation of indirect costs, there are some Federal statutes which restrict the reimbursement of certain indirect costs. Where such restrictions exist, it may be necessary to develop a special rate for the affected award. Where a "restricted rate" is required, the procedure for developing a non-restricted rate will be used except for the additional step of the elimination from the indirect cost pool those costs for which the law prohibits reimbursement.

#### **D. Submission and Documentation of Proposals.**

##### **1. Submission of indirect cost rate proposals.**

a. All departments or agencies of the governmental unit desiring to claim indirect costs under Federal awards must prepare an indirect cost rate proposal and related documentation to support those costs. The proposal and related documentation must be retained for audit in accordance with the records retention requirements contained in the Common Rule.

b. A governmental unit for which a cognizant agency assignment has been specifically designated must submit its indirect cost rate proposal to its cognizant agency. The Office of Management and Budget (OMB) will periodically publish lists of governmental units identifying the appropriate Federal cognizant agencies. The cognizant agency for all governmental units or agencies not identified by OMB will be determined based on the Federal agency providing the largest amount of Federal funds. In these cases, a governmental unit must develop an indirect cost proposal in accordance with the requirements of this Circular and maintain the proposal and related supporting documentation for audit. These governmental units are not required to submit their proposals unless they are specifically requested to do so by the cognizant agency. Where a local government only receives funds as a sub-recipient, the primary recipient will be responsible for negotiating and/or monitoring the sub-recipient's plan.



c. Each Indian tribal government desiring reimbursement of indirect costs must submit its indirect cost proposal to the Department of the Interior (its cognizant Federal agency).

d. Indirect cost proposals must be developed (and, when required, submitted) within six months after the close of the governmental unit's fiscal year, unless an exception is approved by the cognizant Federal agency. If the proposed central service cost allocation plan for the same period has not been approved by that time, the indirect cost proposal may be prepared including an amount for central services that is based on the latest federally-approved central service cost allocation plan. The difference between these central service amounts and the amounts ultimately approved will be compensated for by an adjustment in a subsequent period.

2. Documentation of proposals. The following shall be included with each indirect cost proposal:

a. The rates proposed, including subsidiary work sheets and other relevant data, cross referenced and reconciled to the financial data noted in subsection b. Allocated central service costs will be supported by the summary table included in the approved central service cost allocation plan. This summary table is not required to be submitted with the indirect cost proposal if the central service cost allocation plan for the same fiscal year has been approved by the cognizant agency and is available to the funding agency.

b. A copy of the financial data (financial statements, comprehensive annual financial report, executive budgets, accounting reports, etc.) upon which the rate is based. Adjustments resulting from the use of unaudited data will be recognized, where appropriate, by the Federal cognizant agency in a subsequent proposal.

c. The approximate amount of direct base costs incurred under Federal awards. These costs should be broken out between salaries and wages and other direct costs.

d. A chart showing the organizational structure of the agency during the period for which the proposal applies, along with a functional statement(s) noting the duties and/or responsibilities of all units that comprise the agency. (Once this is submitted, only revisions need be submitted with subsequent proposals.)

3. Required certification. Each indirect cost rate proposal shall be accompanied by a certification in the following form:

#### **CERTIFICATE OF INDIRECT COSTS**

This is to certify that I have reviewed the indirect cost rate proposal submitted herewith and to the best of my knowledge and belief:

(1) All costs included in this proposal [identify date] to establish billing or final indirect costs rates for [identify period covered by rate] are allowable in accordance with the requirements of the Federal award(s) to which they apply and OMB Circular A-87, "Cost Principles for State, Local, and Indian Tribal Governments." Unallowable costs have been adjusted for in allocating costs as indicated in the cost allocation plan.



(2) All costs included in this proposal are properly allocable to Federal awards on the basis of a beneficial or causal relationship between the expenses incurred and the agreements to which they are allocated in accordance with applicable requirements. Further, the same costs that have been treated as indirect costs have not been claimed as direct costs. Similar types of costs have been accounted for consistently and the Federal Government will be notified of any accounting changes that would affect the predetermined rate.

I declare that the foregoing is true and correct.

Governmental Unit: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Official: \_\_\_\_\_

Title: \_\_\_\_\_

Date of Execution: \_\_\_\_\_

**E. Negotiation and Approval of Rates.**

1. Indirect cost rates will be reviewed, negotiated, and approved by the cognizant Federal agency on a timely basis. Once a rate has been agreed upon, it will be accepted and used by all Federal agencies unless prohibited or limited by statute. Where a Federal funding agency has reason to believe that special operating factors affecting its awards necessitate special indirect cost rates, the funding agency will, prior to the time the rates are negotiated, notify the cognizant Federal agency.

2. The use of predetermined rates, if allowed, is encouraged where the cognizant agency has reasonable assurance based on past experience and reliable projection of the grantee agency's costs, that the rate is not likely to exceed a rate based on actual costs. Long-term agreements utilizing predetermined rates extending over two or more years are encouraged, where appropriate.

3. The results of each negotiation shall be formalized in a written agreement between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit. This agreement will be subject to re-opening if the agreement is subsequently found to violate a statute, or the information upon which the plan was negotiated is later found to be materially incomplete or inaccurate. The agreed upon rates shall be made available to all Federal agencies for their use.

4. Refunds shall be made if proposals are later found to have included costs that (a) are unallowable (i) as specified by law or regulation, (ii) as identified in Attachment B of this Circular, or (iii) by the terms and conditions of Federal awards, or (b) are unallowable because they are clearly not allocable to Federal awards. These adjustments or refunds will be made regardless of the type of rate negotiated (predetermined, final, fixed, or provisional).

**F. Other Policies.**



1. Fringe benefit rates. If overall fringe benefit rates are not approved for the governmental unit as part of the central service cost allocation plan, these rates will be reviewed, negotiated and approved for individual grantee agencies during the indirect cost negotiation process. In these cases, a proposed fringe benefit rate computation should accompany the indirect cost proposal. If fringe benefit rates are not used at the grantee agency level (i.e., the agency specifically identifies fringe benefit costs to individual employees), the governmental unit should so advise the cognizant agency.
2. Billed services provided by the grantee agency. In some cases, governmental units provide and bill for services similar to those covered by central service cost allocation plans (e.g., computer centers). Where this occurs, the governmental unit should be guided by the requirements in Attachment C relating to the development of billing rates and documentation requirements, and should advise the cognizant agency of any billed services. Reviews of these types of services (including reviews of costing/billing methodology, profits or losses, etc.) will be made on a case-by-case basis as warranted by the circumstances involved.
3. Indirect cost allocations not using rates. In certain situations, a governmental unit, because of the nature of its awards, may be required to develop a cost allocation plan that distributes indirect (and, in some cases, direct) costs to the specific funding sources. In these cases, a narrative cost allocation methodology should be developed, documented, maintained for audit, or submitted, as appropriate, to the cognizant agency for review, negotiation, and approval.
4. Appeals. If a dispute arises in a negotiation of an indirect cost rate (or other rate) between the cognizant agency and the governmental unit, the dispute shall be resolved in accordance with the appeals procedures of the cognizant agency.
5. Collection of unallowable costs and erroneous payments. Costs specifically identified as unallowable and charged to Federal awards either directly or indirectly will be refunded (including interest chargeable in accordance with applicable Federal agency regulations).
6. OMB assistance. To the extent that problems are encountered among the Federal agencies and/or governmental units in connection with the negotiation and approval process, OMB will lend assistance, as required, to resolve such problems in a timely manner.







**Item: IV**  
**24 CFR Part 58**  
**(Environmental Review Regulation)**







[Home Page](#) > [Executive Branch](#) > [Code of Federal Regulations](#) > [Electronic Code of Federal Regulations](#)

## Electronic Code of Federal Regulations

*e-CFR*  
TM

e-CFR Data is current as of September 13, 2010

### Title 24: Housing and Urban Development

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

#### PART 58—ENVIRONMENTAL REVIEW PROCEDURES FOR ENTITIES ASSUMING HUD ENVIRONMENTAL RESPONSIBILITIES

##### Section Contents

##### Subpart A—Purpose, Legal Authority, Federal Laws and Authorities

- [§ 58.1 Purpose and applicability.](#)
- [§ 58.2 Terms, abbreviations and definitions.](#)
- [§ 58.4 Assumption authority.](#)
- [§ 58.5 Related Federal laws and authorities.](#)
- [§ 58.6 Other requirements.](#)

##### Subpart B—General Policy: Responsibilities of Responsible Entities

- [§ 58.10 Basic environmental responsibility.](#)
- [§ 58.11 Legal capacity and performance.](#)
- [§ 58.12 Technical and administrative capacity.](#)
- [§ 58.13 Responsibilities of the certifying officer.](#)
- [§ 58.14 Interaction with State, Federal and non-Federal entities.](#)
- [§ 58.15 Tiering.](#)
- [§ 58.17 \[Reserved\]](#)
- [§ 58.18 Responsibilities of States assuming HUD environmental responsibilities.](#)

##### Subpart C—General Policy: Environmental Review Procedures

- [§ 58.21 Time periods.](#)
- [§ 58.22 Limitations on activities pending clearance.](#)
- [§ 58.23 Financial assistance for environmental review.](#)

##### Subpart D—Environmental Review Process: Documentation, Range of Activities, Project Aggregation and Classification

- [§ 58.30 Environmental review process.](#)
- [§ 58.32 Project aggregation.](#)
- [§ 58.33 Emergencies.](#)
- [§ 58.34 Exempt activities.](#)
- [§ 58.35 Categorical exclusions.](#)
- [§ 58.36 Environmental assessments.](#)
- [§ 58.37 Environmental impact statement determinations.](#)
- [§ 58.38 Environmental review record.](#)

##### Subpart E—Environmental Review Process: Environmental Assessments (EA's)

- [§ 58.40 Preparing the environmental assessment.](#)



- 58.43 Dissemination and/or publication of the findings of no significant impact.
- 58.45 Public comment periods.
- 58.46 Time delays for exceptional circumstances.
- 58.47 Re-evaluation of environmental assessments and other environmental findings.

#### **Subpart F—Environmental Review Process: Environmental Impact Statement Determinations**

- 58.52 Adoption of other agencies' EISs.
- 58.53 Use of prior environmental impact statements.

#### **Subpart G—Environmental Review Process: Procedures for Draft, Final and Supplemental Environmental Impact Statements**

- 58.55 Notice of intent to prepare an EIS.
- 58.56 Scoping process.
- 58.57 Lead agency designation.
- 58.59 Public hearings and meetings.
- 58.60 Preparation and filing of environmental impact statements.

#### **Subpart H—Release of Funds for Particular Projects**

- 58.70 Notice of intent to request release of funds.
- 58.71 Request for release of funds and certification.
- 58.72 HUD or State actions on RROFs and certifications.
- 58.73 Objections to release of funds.
- 58.74 Time for objecting.
- 58.75 Permissible bases for objections.
- 58.76 Procedure for objections.
- 58.77 Effect of approval of certification.

**Authority:** 12 U.S.C. 1707 note, 1715z–13a(k); 25 U.S.C. 4115 and 4226; 42 U.S.C. 1437x, 3535(d), 547, 4332, 4852, 5304(g), 11402, 12838, and 12905(h); title II of Pub. L. 105–276; E.O. 11514 as amended by E.O. 11991, 3 CFR 1977 Comp., p. 123.

**Source:** 61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, unless otherwise noted.

#### **Subpart A—Purpose, Legal Authority, Federal Laws and Authorities**



[top](#)

##### **58.1 Purpose and applicability.**



[top](#)

a) *Purpose.* This part provides instructions and guidance to recipients of HUD assistance and other responsible entities for conducting an environmental review for a particular project or activity and for obtaining approval of a Request for Release of Funds.

b) *Applicability.* This part applies to activities and projects where specific statutory authority exists for recipients or other responsible entities to assume environmental responsibilities. Programs and activities subject to this part include:

1) Community Development Block Grant programs authorized by Title I of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, in accordance with section 104(g) (42 U.S.C. 5304(g));

2) [Reserved]

3)(i) Grants to states and units of general local government under the Emergency Shelter Grant Program, Supportive Housing Program (and its predecessors, the Supportive Housing Demonstration



Program (both Transitional Housing and Permanent Housing for Homeless Persons with Disabilities) and Supplemental Assistance for Facilities to Assist the Homeless), Shelter Plus Care Program, Safe Housing for Homeless Individuals Demonstration Program, and Rural Homeless Housing Assistance, authorized by Title IV of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, in accordance with section 443 (42 U.S.C. 11402).

(ii) Grants beginning with Fiscal Year 2001 to private non-profit organizations and housing agencies under the Supportive Housing Program and Shelter Plus Care Program authorized by Title IV of the McKinney-Vento Homeless Assistance Act, in accordance with section 443 (42 U.S.C. 11402);

(4) The HOME Investment Partnerships Program authorized by Title II of the Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act (NAHA), in accordance with section 288 (42 U.S.C. 12838);

(5) Grants to States and units of general local government for abatement of lead-based paint and lead dust hazards pursuant to Title II of the Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development and Independent Agencies Appropriations Act, 1992, and grants for lead-based paint hazard reduction under section 1011 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, in accordance with section 1011(o) (42 U.S.C. 4852(o));

(6)(i) Public Housing Programs under Title I of the United States Housing Act of 1937, including HOPE VI grants authorized under section 24 of the Act for Fiscal Year 2000 and later, in accordance with section 26 (42 U.S.C. 1437x);

(ii) Grants for the revitalization of severely distressed public housing (HOPE VI) for Fiscal Year 1999 and prior years, in accordance with Title II of the Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development, and Independent Agencies Appropriations Act, 1999 (Pub. L. 105-276, approved October 21, 1998); and

(iii) Assistance administered by a public housing agency under section 8 of the United States Housing Act of 1937, except for assistance provided under part 886 of this title, in accordance with section 26 (42 U.S.C. 1437x);

(7) Special Projects appropriated under an appropriation act for HUD, such as special projects under the heading "Annual Contributions for Assisted Housing" in Title II of various Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development, and Independent Agencies Appropriations Acts, in accordance with section 305(c) of the Multifamily Housing Property Disposition Reform Act of 1994 (42 U.S.C. 3547);

(8) The FHA Multifamily Housing Finance Agency Pilot Program under section 542(c) of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, in accordance with section 542(c)(9)(12 U.S.C. 1707 note);

(9) The Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity Program under section 11 of the Housing Opportunity Program Extension Act of 1996 (Pub. L. 104-120, 110 Stat. 834), in accordance with section 11(m));

(10) Assistance provided under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (NAHASDA), in accordance with:

(i) Section 105 for Indian Housing Block Grants and Federal Guarantees or Financing for Tribal Housing Authorities (25 U.S.C. 4115 and 4226); and

(ii) Section 806 for Native Hawaiian Housing Block Grants (25 U.S.C. 4226);

(11) Indian Housing Loan Guarantees authorized by section 184 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992, in accordance with section 184(k) (12 U.S.C. 1715z-13a(k)); and

(12) Grants for Housing Opportunities for Persons with AIDS (HOPWA) under the AIDS Housing Opportunity Act, as follows: competitive grants beginning with Fiscal Year 2001 and all formula grants, in accordance with section 856(h) (42 U.S.C. 12905(h)); all grants for Fiscal Year 1999 and prior years, in accordance with section 207(c) of the Departments of Veterans Affairs and Housing and Urban Development, and Independent Agencies Appropriations Act, 1999 (Pub. L. 105-276, approved October 21, 1998).



(c) When HUD assistance is used to help fund a revolving loan fund that is administered by a recipient or another party, the activities initially receiving assistance from the fund are subject to the requirements in this part. Future activities receiving assistance from the revolving loan fund, after the fund has received loan repayments, are subject to the environmental review requirements if the rules of the HUD program that initially provided assistance to the fund continue to treat the activities as subject to the Federal requirements. If the HUD program treats the activities as not being subject to any Federal requirements, then the activities cease to become Federally-funded activities and the provisions of this part do not apply.

(d) To the extent permitted by applicable laws and the applicable regulations of the Council on Environmental Quality, the Assistant Secretary for Community Planning and Development may, for good cause and with appropriate conditions, approve waivers and exceptions or establish criteria for exceptions from the requirements of this part.

[61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56127, Sept. 29, 2003]

## § 58.2 Terms, abbreviations and definitions.



[top](#)

(a) For the purposes of this part, the following definitions supplement the uniform terminology provided in 40 CFR part 1508:

1) *Activity* means an action that a grantee or recipient puts forth as part of an assisted project, regardless of whether its cost is to be borne by the HUD assistance or is an eligible expense under the HUD assistance program.

2) *Certifying Officer* means the official who is authorized to execute the Request for Release of Funds and Certification and has the legal capacity to carry out the responsibilities of §58.13.

3) *Extraordinary Circumstances* means a situation in which an environmental assessment (EA) or environmental impact statement (EIS) is not normally required, but due to unusual conditions, an EA or EIS is appropriate. Indicators of unusual conditions are:

- i) Actions that are unique or without precedent;
- ii) Actions that are substantially similar to those that normally require an EIS;
- iii) Actions that are likely to alter existing HUD policy or HUD mandates; or
- iv) Actions that, due to unusual physical conditions on the site or in the vicinity, have the potential for a significant impact on the environment or in which the environment could have a significant impact on users of the facility.

4) *Project* means an activity, or a group of integrally related activities, designed by the recipient to accomplish, in whole or in part, a specific objective.

5) *Recipient* means any of the following entities, when they are eligible recipients or grantees under a program listed in §58.1(b):

) A State that does not distribute HUD assistance under the program to a unit of general local government;

i) Guam, the Northern Mariana Islands, the Virgin Islands, American Samoa, and Palau;

ii) A unit of general local government;

v) An Indian tribe;



(v) With respect to Public Housing Programs under §58.1(b)(6)(i), fiscal year 1999 and prior HOPE VI grants under §58.1(b)(6)(ii) or Section 8 assistance under §58.1(b)(6)(iii), a public housing agency;

(vi) Any direct grantee of HUD for a special project under §58.1(b)(7);

(vii) With respect to the FHA Multifamily Housing Finance Agency Program under §58.1(b)(8), a qualified housing finance agency;

(viii) With respect to the Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity Program under §58.1(b)(9), any direct grantee of HUD;

(ix)(A) With respect to NAHASDA assistance under §58.1(b)(10), the Indian tribe or the Department of Hawaiian Home Lands; and

(B) With respect to the Section 184 Indian Housing Loan Guarantee program under §58.1(b)(11), the Indian tribe.

(x) With respect to the Shelter Plus Care and Supportive Housing Programs under §58.1(b)(3)(ii), nonprofit organizations and other entities.

(6) *Release of funds.* In the case of the FHA Multifamily Housing Finance Agency Program under §58.1(b)(8), Release of Funds, as used in this part, refers to HUD issuance of a firm approval letter, and Request for Release of Funds refers to a recipient's request for a firm approval letter. In the case of the Section 184 Indian Housing Loan Guarantee program under §58.1(b)(11), Release of Funds refers to HUD's issuance of a commitment to guarantee a loan, or if there is no commitment, HUD's issuance of a certificate of guarantee.

(7) *Responsible Entity.* Responsible Entity means:

(i) With respect to environmental responsibilities under programs listed in §58.1(b)(1), (2), (3)(i), (4), and (5), the recipient under the program.

(ii) With respect to environmental responsibilities under the programs listed in §58.1(b)(3)(ii) and (6) through (12), a state, unit of general local government, Indian tribe or Alaska Native Village, or the Department of Hawaiian Home Lands, when it is the recipient under the program. Under the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4101 *et seq.*) listed in §58.1(b)(10)(i), the Indian tribe is the responsible entity whether or not a Tribally Designated Housing Entity is authorized to receive grant amounts on behalf of the tribe. The Indian tribe is also the responsible entity under the Section 184 Indian Housing Loan Guarantee program listed in §58.1(b)(11). Regional Corporations in Alaska are considered Indian tribes in this part. Non-recipient responsible entities are designated as follows:

(A) For qualified housing finance agencies, the State or a unit of general local government, Indian tribe or Alaska native village whose jurisdiction contains the project site;

(B) For public housing agencies, the unit of general local government within which the project is located that exercises land use responsibility, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the county, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the State;

(C) For non-profit organizations and other entities, the unit of general local government, Indian tribe or Alaska native village within which the project is located that exercises land use responsibility, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the county, or if HUD determines this infeasible, the State;

(8) *Unit Density* refers to a change in the number of dwelling units. Where a threshold is identified as a percentage change in density that triggers review requirements, no distinction is made between an increase or a decrease in density.

(9) *Tiering* means the evaluation of an action or an activity at various points in the development process as a proposal or event becomes ripe for an Environment Assessment or Review.



(10) *Vacant Building* means a habitable structure that has been vacant for more than one year.

(b) The following abbreviations are used throughout this part:

- (1) CDBG—Community Development Block Grant;
- (2) CEQ—Council on Environmental Quality;
- (3) EA—Environmental Assessment;
- (4) EIS—Environmental Impact Statement;
- (5) EPA—Environmental Protection Agency;
- (6) ERR—Environmental Review Record;
- (7) FONSI—Finding of No Significant Impact;
- (8) HUD—Department of Housing and Urban Development;
- (9) NAHA—Cranston-Gonzalez National Affordable Housing Act of 1990;
- (10) NEPA—National Environmental Policy Act of 1969, as amended;
- (11) NOI/EIS—Notice of Intent to Prepare an EIS;
- (12) NOI/RROF—Notice of Intent to Request Release of Funds;
- (13) ROD—Record of Decision;
- (14) ROF—Release of Funds; and
- (15) RROF—Request for Release of Funds.

31 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56128, Sept. 29, 2003]

#### **§ 58.4 Assumption authority.**

[top](#)

a) *Assumption authority for responsible entities: General.* Responsible entities shall assume the responsibility for environmental review, decision-making, and action that would otherwise apply to HUD under NEPA and other provisions of law that further the purposes of NEPA, as specified in §58.5. Responsible entities that receive assistance directly from HUD assume these responsibilities by execution of a grant agreement with HUD and/or a legally binding document such as the certification contained on HUD Form 7015.15, certifying to the assumption of environmental responsibilities. When a State distributes funds to a responsible entity, the State must provide for appropriate procedures by which these responsible entities will evidence their assumption of environmental responsibilities.

b) *Particular responsibilities of the States.* (1) States are recipients for purposes of directly undertaking State project and must assume the environmental review responsibilities for the State's activities and those of any non-governmental entity that may participate in the project. In this case, the State must submit the certification and RROF to HUD for approval.

2) States must exercise HUD's responsibilities in accordance with §58.18, with respect to approval of a unit of local government's environmental certification and RROF for a HUD assisted project funded through the state. Approval by the state of a unit of local government's certification and RROF satisfies



the Secretary's responsibilities under NEPA and the related laws cited in §58.5.

*Particular responsibilities of Indian tribes.* An Indian tribe may, but is not required to, assume responsibilities for environmental review, decision-making and action for programs authorized by the Native American Housing Assistance and Self-Determination Act of 1996 (25 U.S.C. 4101 *et seq.*) (other than title VIII) or section 184 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992 (12 U.S.C. 1715z–13a). The tribe must make a separate decision regarding assumption of responsibilities for each of these Acts and communicate that decision in writing to HUD. If the tribe assumes these responsibilities, the requirements of this part shall apply. If a tribe formally declines assumption of these responsibilities, they are retained by HUD and the provisions of part 50 of this title apply.

[61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56128, Sept. 29, 2003]

## § 58.5 Related Federal laws and authorities.



[top](#)

In accordance with the provisions of law cited in §58.1(b), the responsible entity must assume responsibilities for environmental review, decision-making and action that would apply to HUD under the following specified laws and authorities. The responsible entity must certify that it has complied with the requirements that would apply to HUD under these laws and authorities and must consider the criteria, standards, policies and regulations of these laws and authorities.

(a) *Historic properties.* (1) The National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (16 U.S.C. 470 *et seq.*), particularly sections 106 and 110 (16 U.S.C. 470 and 470h–2).

(2) Executive Order 11593, Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment, May 13, 1971 (36 FR 8921), 3 CFR 1971–1975 Comp., p. 559, particularly section 2(c).

(3) Federal historic preservation regulations as follows:

(i) 36 CFR part 800 with respect to HUD programs other than Urban Development Action Grants (UDAG); and

(ii) 36 CFR part 801 with respect to UDAG.

(4) The Reservoir Salvage Act of 1960 as amended by the Archeological and Historic Preservation Act of 1974 (16 U.S.C. 469 *et seq.*), particularly section 3 (16 U.S.C. 469a–1).

(b) *Floodplain management and wetland protection.* (1) Executive Order 11988, Floodplain Management, May 24, 1977 (42 FR 26951), 3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 117, as interpreted in HUD regulations at 24 CFR part 55, particularly section 2(a) of the order (For an explanation of the relationship between the decision-making process in 24 CFR part 55 and this part, see §55.10 of this subtitle A.)

(2) Executive Order 11990, Protection of Wetlands, May 24, 1977 (42 FR 26961), 3 CFR, 1977 Comp., p. 121, particularly sections 2 and 5.

(c) *Coastal Zone Management.* The Coastal Zone Management Act of 1972 (16 U.S.C. 1451 *et seq.*), as amended, particularly section 307(c) and (d) (16 U.S.C. 1456(c) and (d)).

(d) *Sole source aquifers.* (1) The Safe Drinking Water Act of 1974 (42 U.S.C. 201, 300(f) *et seq.*, and 21 U.S.C. 349) as amended; particularly section 1424(e)(42 U.S.C. 300h–3(e)).

(2) Sole Source Aquifers (Environmental Protection Agency—40 CFR part 149).

(e) *Endangered species.* The Endangered Species Act of 1973 (16 U.S.C. 1531 *et seq.*) as amended, particularly section 7 (16 U.S.C. 1536).



f) *Wild and scenic rivers.* The Wild and Scenic Rivers Act of 1968 (16 U.S.C. 1271 *et seq.* ) as amended, particularly section 7(b) and (c) (16 U.S.C. 1278(b) and (c)).

g) *Air quality.* (1) The Clean Air Act (42 U.S.C. 7401 *et seq.* ) as amended; particularly section 176(c) and (d) (42 U.S.C. 7506(c) and (d)).

2) Determining Conformity of Federal Actions to State or Federal Implementation Plans (Environmental Protection Agency—40 CFR parts 6, 51, and 93).

h) *Farmlands protection.* (1) Farmland Protection Policy Act of 1981 (7 U.S.C. 4201 *et seq.* ) particularly sections 1540(b) and 1541 (7 U.S.C. 4201(b) and 4202).

2) Farmland Protection Policy (Department of Agriculture—7 CFR part 658).

i) *HUD environmental standards.* (1) Applicable criteria and standards specified in part 51 of this title, other than the runway clear zone notification requirement in §51.303(a)(3).

2)(i) Also, it is HUD policy that all properties that are being proposed for use in HUD programs be free of hazardous materials, contamination, toxic chemicals and gases, and radioactive substances, where a hazard could affect the health and safety of occupants or conflict with the intended utilization of the property.

ii) The environmental review of multifamily housing with five or more dwelling units (including leasing), or non-residential property, must include the evaluation of previous uses of the site or other evidence of contamination on or near the site, to ensure that the occupants of proposed sites are not adversely affected by any of the hazards listed in paragraph (i)(2)(i) of this section.

iii) Particular attention should be given to any proposed site on or in the general proximity of such areas as dumps, landfills, industrial sites, or other locations that contain, or may have contained, hazardous wastes.

iv) The responsible entity shall use current techniques by qualified professionals to undertake investigations determined necessary.

j) *Environmental justice.* Executive Order 12898—Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations, February 11, 1994 (59 FR 7629), 3 CFR, 1994 Comp. p. 859.

31 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56128, Sept. 29, 2003]

## 58.6 Other requirements.



In addition to the duties under the laws and authorities specified in §58.5 for assumption by the responsible entity under the laws cited in §58.1(b), the responsible entity must comply with the following requirements. Applicability of the following requirements does not trigger the certification and release of funds procedure under this part or preclude exemption of an activity under §58.34(a)(12) and/or the applicability of §58.35(b). However, the responsible entity remains responsible for addressing the following requirements in its ERR and meeting these requirements, where applicable, regardless of whether the activity is exempt under §58.34 or categorically excluded under §58.35(a) or (b).

a)(1) Under the Flood Disaster Protection Act of 1973, as amended (42 U.S.C. 4001–4128), Federal financial assistance for acquisition and construction purposes (including rehabilitation) may not be used in an area identified by the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) as having special flood hazards, unless:

) The community in which the area is situated is participating in the National Flood Insurance Program (see 44 CFR parts 59 through 79), or less than one year has passed since the FEMA notification



regarding such hazards; and

(i) Where the community is participating in the National Flood Insurance Program, flood insurance participation is to be obtained as a condition of the approval of financial assistance to the property owner.

(2) Where the community is participating in the National Flood Insurance Program and the recipient provides financial assistance for acquisition or construction purposes (including rehabilitation) for property located in an area identified by FEMA as having special flood hazards, the responsible entity is responsible for assuring that flood insurance under the National Flood Insurance Program is obtained and maintained.

(3) Paragraph (a) of this section does not apply to Federal formula grants made to a State.

(b) Under section 582 of the National Flood Insurance Reform Act of 1994, 42 U.S.C. 5154a, HUD disaster assistance that is made available in a special flood hazard area may not be used to make a payment (including any loan assistance payment) to a person for repair, replacement or restoration for flood damage to any personal, residential or commercial property if:

(1) The person had previously received Federal flood disaster assistance conditioned on obtaining and maintaining flood insurance; and

(2) The person failed to obtain and maintain flood insurance.

(c) Pursuant to the Coastal Barrier Resources Act, as amended by the Coastal Barrier Improvement Act of 1990 (16 U.S.C. 3501), HUD assistance may not be used for most activities proposed in the Coastal Barrier Resources System.

(d) In all cases involving HUD assistance, subsidy, or insurance for the purchase or sale of an existing property in a Runway Clear Zone or Clear Zone, as defined in 24 CFR part 51, the responsible entity shall advise the buyer that the property is in a runway clear zone or clear zone, what the implications of such location are, and that there is a possibility that the property may, at a later date, be acquired by the airport operator. The buyer must sign a statement acknowledging receipt of this information.

[61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 15271, Mar. 30, 1998]

## Subpart B—General Policy: Responsibilities of Responsible Entities



[top](#)

### § 58.10 Basic environmental responsibility.



[top](#)

In accordance with the provisions of law cited in §58.1(b), except as otherwise provided in §58.4(c), the responsible entity must assume the environmental responsibilities for projects under programs cited in §58.1(b). In doing so, the responsible entity must comply with the provisions of NEPA and the CEQ regulations contained in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508, including the requirements set forth in this part.

[68 FR 56128, Sept. 29, 2003]

### § 58.11 Legal capacity and performance.



[top](#)

A responsible entity which believes that it does not have the legal capacity to carry out the environmental responsibilities required by this part must contact the appropriate local HUD Office or the



State for further instructions. Determinations of legal capacity will be made on a case-by-case basis.

(b) If a public housing, special project, HOPWA, Supportive Housing, Shelter Plus Care, or Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity recipient that is not a responsible entity objects to the non-recipient responsible entity conducting the environmental review on the basis of performance, timing, or compatibility of objectives, HUD will review the facts to determine who will perform the environmental review.

(c) At any time, HUD may reject the use of a responsible entity to conduct the environmental review in a particular case on the basis of performance, timing or compatibility of objectives, or in accordance with §58.77(d)(1).

(d) If a responsible entity, other than a recipient, objects to performing an environmental review, or if HUD determines that the responsible entity should not perform the environmental review, HUD may designate another responsible entity to conduct the review in accordance with this part or may itself conduct the environmental review in accordance with the provisions of 24 CFR part 50.

[61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56129, Sept. 29, 2003]

#### **§ 58.12 Technical and administrative capacity.**



[top](#)

The responsible entity must develop the technical and administrative capability necessary to comply with 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508 and the requirements of this part.

#### **§ 58.13 Responsibilities of the certifying officer.**



[top](#)

Under the terms of the certification required by §58.71, a responsible entity's certifying officer is the responsible Federal official" as that term is used in section 102 of NEPA and in statutory provisions cited in §58.1(b). The Certifying Officer is therefore responsible for all the requirements of section 102 of NEPA and the related provisions in 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508, and 24 CFR part 58, including the related Federal authorities listed in §58.5. The Certifying Officer must also:

a) Represent the responsible entity and be subject to the jurisdiction of the Federal courts. The Certifying Officer will not be represented by the Department of Justice in court; and

b) Ensure that the responsible entity reviews and comments on all EISs prepared for Federal projects that may have an impact on the recipient's program.

#### **§ 58.14 Interaction with State, Federal and non-Federal entities.**



[top](#)

A responsible entity shall consult with appropriate environmental agencies, State, Federal and non-Federal entities and the public in the preparation of an EIS, EA or other environmental reviews undertaken under the related laws and authorities cited in §58.5 and §58.6. The responsible entity must also cooperate with other agencies to reduce duplication between NEPA and comparable environmental review requirements of the State (see 40 CFR 1506.2 (b) and (c)). The responsible entity must prepare EAs and EISs so that they comply with the environmental review requirements of both Federal and State laws unless otherwise specified or provided by law. State, Federal and local agencies may participate or act in a joint lead or cooperating agency capacity in the preparation of joint EISs or joint environmental assessments (see 40 CFR 1501.5(b) and 1501.6). A single EIS or EA may be prepared and adopted by multiple users to the extent that the review addresses the relevant environmental issues and there is a written agreement between the cooperating agencies which sets forth the coordinated and overall responsibilities.



[63 FR 15271, Mar 30, 1998]

**§ 15 Tiering.**[top](#)

Responsible entities may tier their environmental reviews and assessments to eliminate repetitive discussions of the same issues at subsequent levels of review. Tiering is appropriate when there is a requirement to evaluate a policy or proposal in the early stages of development or when site-specific analysis or mitigation is not currently feasible and a more narrow or focused analysis is better done at a later date. The site specific review need only reference or summarize the issues addressed in the broader review. The broader review should identify and evaluate those issues ripe for decision and exclude those issues not relevant to the policy, program or project under consideration. The broader review should also establish the policy, standard or process to be followed in the site specific review. The Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI) with respect to the broader assessment shall include a summary of the assessment and identify the significant issues to be considered in site specific reviews. Subsequent site-specific reviews will not require notices or a Request for Release of Funds unless the Certifying Officer determines that there are unanticipated impacts or impacts not adequately addressed in the prior review. A tiering approach can be used for meeting environmental review requirements in areas designated for special focus in local Consolidated Plans. Local and State Governments are encouraged to use the Consolidated Plan process to facilitate environmental reviews.

**§ 58.17 [Reserved]**[top](#)**§ 58.18 Responsibilities of States assuming HUD environmental responsibilities.**[top](#)

States that elect to administer a HUD program shall ensure that the program complies with the provisions of this part. The state must:

(a) Designate the state agency or agencies that will be responsible for carrying out the requirements and administrative responsibilities set forth in subpart H of this part and which will:

(1) Develop a monitoring and enforcement program for post-review actions on environmental reviews and monitor compliance with any environmental conditions included in the award.

(2) Receive public notices, RROFs, and certifications from recipients pursuant to §§58.70 and 58.71; accept objections from the public and from other agencies (§58.73); and perform other related responsibilities regarding releases of funds.

(b) Fulfill the state role in subpart H relative to the time period set for the receipt and disposition of comments, objections and appeals (if any) on particular projects.

[68 FR 56129, Sept. 29, 2003]

**Subpart C—General Policy: Environmental Review Procedures**[top](#)**§ 58.21 Time periods.**[2](#)



If time periods in this part shall be counted in calendar days. The first day of a time period begins at 2:01 a.m. local time on the day following the publication or the mailing and posting date of the notice which initiates the time period.

#### 58.22 Limitations on activities pending clearance.

 [top](#)

a) Neither a recipient nor any participant in the development process, including public or private nonprofit or for-profit entities, or any of their contractors, may commit HUD assistance under a program listed in §58.1(b) on an activity or project until HUD or the state has approved the recipient's RROF and the related certification from the responsible entity. In addition, until the RROF and the related certification have been approved, neither a recipient nor any participant in the development process may commit non-HUD funds on or undertake an activity or project under a program listed in §58.1(b) if the activity or project would have an adverse environmental impact or limit the choice of reasonable alternatives.

b) If a project or activity is exempt under §58.34, or is categorically excluded (except in extraordinary circumstances) under §58.35(b), no RROF is required and the recipient may undertake the activity immediately after the responsible entity has documented its determination as required in §58.34(b) and §58.35(d), but the recipient must comply with applicable requirements under §58.6.

c) If a recipient is considering an application from a prospective subrecipient or beneficiary and is aware that the prospective subrecipient or beneficiary is about to take an action within the jurisdiction of the recipient that is prohibited by paragraph (a) of this section, then the recipient will take appropriate action to ensure that the objectives and procedures of NEPA are achieved.

d) An option agreement on a proposed site or property is allowable prior to the completion of the environmental review if the option agreement is subject to a determination by the recipient on the desirability of the property for the project as a result of the completion of the environmental review in accordance with this part and the cost of the option is a nominal portion of the purchase price. There is no constraint on the purchase of an option by third parties that have not been selected for HUD funding, have no responsibility for the environmental review and have no say in the approval or disapproval of the project.

e) *Self-Help Homeownership Opportunity Program (SHOP)*. In accordance with section 11(d)(2)(A) of the Housing Opportunity Program Extension Act of 1996 (42 U.S.C. 12805 note), an organization, consortium, or affiliate receiving assistance under the SHOP program may advance nongrant funds to acquire land prior to completion of an environmental review and approval of a Request for Release of Funds (RROF) and certification, notwithstanding paragraph (a) of this section. Any advances to acquire land prior to approval of the RROF and certification are made at the risk of the organization, consortium, or affiliate and reimbursement for such advances may depend on the result of the environmental review. This authorization is limited to the SHOP program only and all other forms of HUD assistance are subject to the limitations in paragraph (a) of this section.

f) *Relocation*. Funds may be committed for relocation assistance before the approval of the RROF and related certification for the project provided that the relocation assistance is required by 24 CFR part 42.

[58 FR 56129, Sept. 29, 2003]

#### 58.23 Financial assistance for environmental review.

 [top](#)

The costs of environmental reviews, including costs incurred in complying with any of the related laws and authorities cited in §58.5 and §58.6, are eligible costs to the extent allowable under the HUD assistance program regulations.

### Subpart D—Environmental Review Process: Documentation, Range of Activities, Project Aggregation and Classification



[top](#)

## § 58.30 Environmental review process.

[top](#)

(a) The environmental review process consists of all the actions that a responsible entity must take to determine compliance with this part. The environmental review process includes all the compliance actions needed for other activities and projects that are not assisted by HUD but are aggregated by the responsible entity in accordance with §58.32.

(b) The environmental review process should begin as soon as a recipient determines the projected use of HUD assistance.

## § 58.32 Project aggregation.

[top](#)

(a) A responsible entity must group together and evaluate as a single project all individual activities which are related either on a geographical or functional basis, or are logical parts of a composite of contemplated actions.

(b) In deciding the most appropriate basis for aggregation when evaluating activities under more than one program, the responsible entity may choose: *functional aggregation* when a specific type of activity (e.g., water improvements) is to take place in several separate locales or jurisdictions; *geographic aggregation* when a mix of dissimilar but related activities is to be concentrated in a fairly specific project area (e.g., a combination of water, sewer and street improvements and economic development activities); or a *combination of aggregation approaches*, which, for various project locations, considers the impacts arising from each functional activity and its interrelationship with other activities.

(c) The purpose of project aggregation is to group together related activities so that the responsible entity can:

(1) Address adequately and analyze, in a single environmental review, the separate and combined impacts of activities that are similar, connected and closely related, or that are dependent upon other activities and actions. (See 40 CFR 1508.25(a)).

(2) Consider reasonable alternative courses of action.

(3) Schedule the activities to resolve conflicts or mitigate the individual, combined and/or cumulative effects.

(4) Prescribe mitigation measures and safeguards including project alternatives and modifications to individual activities.

(d) *Multi-year project aggregation* —(1) *Release of funds*. When a recipient's planning and program development provide for activities to be implemented over two or more years, the responsible entity's environmental review should consider the relationship among all component activities of the multi-year project regardless of the source of funds and address and evaluate their cumulative environmental effects. The estimated range of the aggregated activities and the estimated cost of the total project must be listed and described by the responsible entity in the environmental review and included in the RROF. The release of funds will cover the entire project period.

(2) When one or more of the conditions described in §58.47 exists, the recipient or other responsible entity must re-evaluate the environmental review.

## § 58.33 Emergencies.





(a) In the cases of emergency, disaster or imminent threat to health and safety which warrant the taking of an action with significant environmental impact, the provisions of 40 CFR 1506.11 shall apply.

(b) If funds are needed on an emergency basis and adherence to separate comment periods would prevent the giving of assistance during a Presidentially declared disaster, or during a local emergency that has been declared by the chief elected official of the responsible entity who has proclaimed that there is an immediate need for public action to protect the public safety, the combined Notice of FONSI and Notice of Intent to Request Release of Funds (NOI/RROF) may be disseminated and/or published simultaneously with the submission of the RROF. The combined Notice of FONSI and NOI/RROF shall state that the funds are needed on an emergency basis due to a declared disaster and that the comment periods have been combined. The Notice shall also invite commenters to submit their comments to both HUD and the responsible entity issuing the notice to ensure that these comments will receive full consideration.

[61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56129, Sept. 29, 2003]

#### **§ 58.34 Exempt activities.**



(a) Except for the applicable requirements of §58.6, the responsible entity does not have to comply with the requirements of this part or undertake any environmental review, consultation or other action under NEPA and the other provisions of law or authorities cited in §58.5 for the activities exempt by this section or projects consisting solely of the following exempt activities:

(1) Environmental and other studies, resource identification and the development of plans and strategies;

(2) Information and financial services;

(3) Administrative and management activities;

(4) Public services that will not have a physical impact or result in any physical changes, including but not limited to services concerned with employment, crime prevention, child care, health, drug abuse, education, counseling, energy conservation and welfare or recreational needs;

(5) Inspections and testing of properties for hazards or defects;

(6) Purchase of insurance;

(7) Purchase of tools;

(8) Engineering or design costs;

(9) Technical assistance and training;

(10) Assistance for temporary or permanent improvements that do not alter environmental conditions and are limited to protection, repair, or restoration activities necessary only to control or arrest the effects from disasters or imminent threats to public safety including those resulting from physical deterioration;

(11) Payment of principal and interest on loans made or obligations guaranteed by HUD;

(12) Any of the categorical exclusions listed in §58.35(a) provided that there are no circumstances which require compliance with any other Federal laws and authorities cited in §58.5.

b) A recipient does not have to submit an RROF and certification, and no further approval from HUD or



the State will be needed by the recipient for the drawdown of funds to carry out exempt activities and projects. However, the responsible entity must document in writing its determination that each activity or project is exempt and meets the conditions specified for such exemption under this section.

[61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 15271, Mar. 30, 1998]

### § 58.35 Categorical exclusions.



Categorical exclusion refers to a category of activities for which no environmental impact statement or environmental assessment and finding of no significant impact under NEPA is required, except in extraordinary circumstances (see §58.2(a)(3)) in which a normally excluded activity may have a significant impact. Compliance with the other applicable Federal environmental laws and authorities listed in §58.5 is required for any categorical exclusion listed in paragraph (a) of this section.

(a) *Categorical exclusions subject to §58.5.* The following activities are categorically excluded under NEPA, but may be subject to review under authorities listed in §58.5:

(1) Acquisition, repair, improvement, reconstruction, or rehabilitation of public facilities and improvements (other than buildings) when the facilities and improvements are in place and will be retained in the same use without change in size or capacity of more than 20 percent (e.g., replacement of water or sewer lines, reconstruction of curbs and sidewalks, repaving of streets).

(2) Special projects directed to the removal of material and architectural barriers that restrict the mobility of and accessibility to elderly and handicapped persons.

(3) Rehabilitation of buildings and improvements when the following conditions are met:

(i) In the case of a building for residential use (with one to four units), the density is not increased beyond four units, the land use is not changed, and the footprint of the building is not increased in a floodplain or in a wetland;

(ii) In the case of multifamily residential buildings:

(A) Unit density is not changed more than 20 percent;

(B) The project does not involve changes in land use from residential to non-residential; and

(C) The estimated cost of rehabilitation is less than 75 percent of the total estimated cost of replacement after rehabilitation.

(iii) In the case of non-residential structures, including commercial, industrial, and public buildings:

(A) The facilities and improvements are in place and will not be changed in size or capacity by more than 20 percent; and

(B) The activity does not involve a change in land use, such as from non-residential to residential, commercial to industrial, or from one industrial use to another.

(4)(i) An individual action on up to four dwelling units where there is a maximum of four units on any one site. The units can be four one-unit buildings or one four-unit building or any combination in between; or

(ii) An individual action on a project of five or more housing units developed on scattered sites when the sites are more than 2,000 feet apart and there are not more than four housing units on any one site.

Paragraphs (a)(4)(i) and (ii) of this section do not apply to rehabilitation of a building for residential use (with one to four units) (see paragraph (a)(3)(i) of this section).



5) Acquisition (including leasing) or disposition of, or equity loans on an existing structure, or acquisition (including leasing) of vacant land provided that the structure or land acquired, financed, or disposed of will be retained for the same use.

6) Combinations of the above activities.

b) *Categorical exclusions not subject to §58.5.* The Department has determined that the following categorically excluded activities would not alter any conditions that would require a review or compliance determination under the Federal laws and authorities cited in §58.5. When the following kinds of activities are undertaken, the responsible entity does not have to publish a NOI/RROF or execute a certification and the recipient does not have to submit a RROF to HUD (or the State) except in the circumstances described in paragraph (c) of this section. Following the award of the assistance, no further approval from HUD or the State will be needed with respect to environmental requirements, except where paragraph (c) of this section applies. The recipient remains responsible for carrying out any applicable requirements under §58.6.

1) Tenant-based rental assistance;

2) Supportive services including, but not limited to, health care, housing services, permanent housing placement, day care, nutritional services, short-term payments for rent/mortgage/utility costs, and assistance in gaining access to local, State, and Federal government benefits and services;

3) Operating costs including maintenance, security, operation, utilities, furnishings, equipment, supplies, staff training and recruitment and other incidental costs;

4) Economic development activities, including but not limited to, equipment purchase, inventory financing, interest subsidy, operating expenses and similar costs not associated with construction or expansion of existing operations;

5) Activities to assist homebuyers to purchase existing dwelling units or dwelling units under construction, including closing costs and down payment assistance, interest buydowns, and similar activities that result in the transfer of title.

6) Affordable housing pre-development costs including legal, consulting, developer and other costs related to obtaining site options, project financing, administrative costs and fees for loan commitments, zoning approvals, and other related activities which do not have a physical impact.

7) Approval of supplemental assistance (including insurance or guarantee) to a project previously approved under this part, if the approval is made by the same responsible entity that conducted the environmental review on the original project and re-evaluation of the environmental findings is not required under §58.47.

c) *Circumstances requiring NEPA review.* If a responsible entity determines that an activity or project identified in paragraph (a) or (b) of this section, because of extraordinary circumstances and conditions that affect or affecting the location of the activity or project, may have a significant environmental effect, it shall comply with all the requirements of this part.

d) The Environmental Review Record (ERR) must contain a well organized written record of the process and determinations made under this section.

§1 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 15272, Mar. 30, 1998; 68 FR 56129, Sept. 29, 2003]

## 58.36 Environmental assessments.



If a project is not exempt or categorically excluded under §§58.34 and 58.35, the responsible entity must prepare an EA in accordance with subpart E of this part. If it is evident without preparing an EA that an EIS is required under §58.37, the responsible entity should proceed directly to an EIS.



### § 58.37 Environmental impact statement determinations.



(a) An EIS is required when the project is determined to have a potentially significant impact on the human environment.

(b) An EIS is required under any of the following circumstances, except as provided in paragraph (c) of this section:

(1) The project would provide a site or sites for, or result in the construction of, hospitals or nursing homes containing a total of 2,500 or more beds.

(2) The project would remove, demolish, convert or substantially rehabilitate 2,500 or more existing housing units (but not including rehabilitation projects categorically excluded under §58.35), or would result in the construction or installation of 2,500 or more housing units, or would provide sites for 2,500 or more housing units.

(3) The project would provide enough additional water and sewer capacity to support 2,500 or more additional housing units. The project does not have to be specifically intended for residential use nor does it have to be totally new construction. If the project is designed to provide upgraded service to existing development as well as to serve new development, only that portion of the increased capacity which is intended to serve new development should be counted.

(c) If, on the basis of an EA, a responsible entity determines that the thresholds in paragraph (b) of this section are the sole reason for the EIS, the responsible entity may prepare a FONSI pursuant to 40 CFR 1501.4. In such cases, the FONSI must be made available for public review for at least 30 days before the responsible entity makes the final determination whether to prepare an EIS.

(d) Notwithstanding paragraphs (a) through (c) of this section, an EIS is not required where §58.53 is applicable.

(e) *Recommended EIS Format.* The responsible entity must use the EIS format recommended by the CEQ regulations (40 CFR 1502.10) unless a determination is made on a particular project that there is a compelling reason to do otherwise. In such a case, the EIS format must meet the minimum requirements prescribed in 40 CFR 1502.10.

### § 58.38 Environmental review record.



[top](#)

The responsible entity must maintain a written record of the environmental review undertaken under this part for each project. This document will be designated the "Environmental Review Record" (ERR), and shall be available for public review. The responsible entity must use the current HUD-recommended formats or develop equivalent formats.

(a) *ERR Documents.* The ERR shall contain all the environmental review documents, public notices and written determinations or environmental findings required by this part as evidence of review, decisionmaking and actions pertaining to a particular project of a recipient. The document shall:

1) Describe the project and the activities that the recipient has determined to be part of the project;

2) Evaluate the effects of the project or the activities on the human environment;

3) Document compliance with applicable statutes and authorities, in particular those cited in §58.5 and §58.6; and

4) Record the written determinations and other review findings required by this part (e.g., exempt and



ategorically excluded projects determinations, findings of no significant impact).

g) *Other documents and information.* The ERR shall also contain verifiable source documents and relevant base data used or cited in EAs, EISs or other project review documents. These documents may be incorporated by reference into the ERR provided that each source document is identified and available for inspection by interested parties. Proprietary material and special studies prepared for the recipient that are not otherwise generally available for public review shall not be incorporated by reference but shall be included in the ERR.

#### **Subpart E—Environmental Review Process: Environmental Assessments (EA's)**

[top](#)

#### **58.40 Preparing the environmental assessment.**

[top](#)

The responsible entity may prepare the EA using the HUD recommended format. In preparing an EA for a particular project, the responsible entity must:

a) Determine existing conditions and describe the character, features and resources of the project area and its surroundings; identify the trends that are likely to continue in the absence of the project.

b) Identify all potential environmental impacts, whether beneficial or adverse, and the conditions that could change as a result of the project.

c) Identify, analyze and evaluate all impacts to determine the significance of their effects on the human environment and whether the project will require further compliance under related laws and authorities cited in §§58.5 and §58.6.

d) Examine and recommend feasible ways in which the project or external factors relating to the project could be modified in order to eliminate or minimize adverse environmental impacts.

e) Examine alternatives to the project itself, if appropriate, including the alternative of no action.

f) Complete all environmental review requirements necessary for the project's compliance with applicable authorities cited in §§58.5 and 58.6.

g) Based on steps set forth in paragraph (a) through (f) of this section, make one of the following findings:

1) A Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI), in which the responsible entity determines that the project is not an action that will result in a significant impact on the quality of the human environment. The responsible entity may then proceed to §58.43.

2) A finding of significant impact, in which the project is deemed to be an action which may significantly affect the quality of the human environment. The responsible entity must then proceed with its environmental review under subpart F or G of this part.

#### **58.43 Dissemination and/or publication of the findings of no significant impact.**

[top](#)

a) If the responsible entity makes a finding of no significant impact, it must prepare a FONSI notice, using the current HUD-recommended format or an equivalent format. As a minimum, the responsible entity must send the FONSI notice to individuals and groups known to be interested in the activities, to the local news media, to the appropriate tribal, local, State and Federal agencies; to the Regional Offices



of the Environmental Protection Agency having jurisdiction and to the HUD Field Office (or the State where applicable). The responsible entity may also publish the FONSI notice in a newspaper of general circulation in the affected community. If the notice is not published, it must also be prominently displayed in public buildings, such as the local Post Office and within the project area or in accordance with procedures established as part of the citizen participation process.

(b) The responsible entity may disseminate or publish a FONSI notice at the same time it disseminates or publishes the NOI/RROF required by §58.70. If the notices are released as a combined notice, the combined notice shall:

- (1) Clearly indicate that it is intended to meet two separate procedural requirements; and
- (2) Advise the public to specify in their comments which "notice" their comments address.

(c) The responsible entity must consider the comments and make modifications, if appropriate, in response to the comments, before it completes its environmental certification and before the recipient submits its RROF. If funds will be used in Presidentially declared disaster areas, modifications resulting from public comment, if appropriate, must be made before proceeding with the expenditure of funds.

#### § 58.45 Public comment periods.



Required notices must afford the public the following minimum comment periods, counted in accordance with §58.21:

(a) Notice of Finding of No Significant Impact (FONSI)	15 days when published or, if no publication, 18 days when mailing and posting
(b) Notice of Intent to Request Release of Funds (NOI-RROF)	7 days when published or, if no publication, 10 days when mailing and posting
(c) Concurrent or combined notices	15 days when published or, if no publication, 18 days when mailing and posting

[68 FR 56130, Sept. 29, 2003]

#### § 58.46 Time delays for exceptional circumstances.



The responsible entity must make the FONSI available for public comments for 30 days before the recipient files the RROF when:

- a) There is a considerable interest or controversy concerning the project;
- b) The proposed project is similar to other projects that normally require the preparation of an EIS; or
- c) The project is unique and without precedent.

#### § 58.47 Re-evaluation of environmental assessments and other environmental findings.



- a) A responsible entity must re-evaluate its environmental findings to determine if the original findings are still valid, when:



- 1) The recipient proposes substantial changes in the nature, magnitude or extent of the project, including adding new activities not anticipated in the original scope of the project;
  - 2) There are new circumstances and environmental conditions which may affect the project or have a bearing on its impact, such as concealed or unexpected conditions discovered during the implementation of the project or activity which is proposed to be continued; or
  - 3) The recipient proposes the selection of an alternative not in the original finding.
- b)(1) If the original findings are still valid but the data or conditions upon which they were based have changed, the responsible entity must affirm the original findings and update its ERR by including this re-evaluation and its determination based on its findings. Under these circumstances, if a FONSI notice has already been published, no further publication of a FONSI notice is required.
- 2) If the responsible entity determines that the original findings are no longer valid, it must prepare an EA or an EIS if its evaluation indicates potentially significant impacts.
- 3) Where the recipient is not the responsible entity, the recipient must inform the responsible entity promptly of any proposed substantial changes under paragraph (a)(1) of this section, new circumstances or environmental conditions under paragraph (a)(2) of this section, or any proposals to select a different alternative under paragraph (a)(3) of this section, and must then permit the responsible entity to re-evaluate the findings before proceeding.

61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 15272, Mar. 30, 1998]

#### Subpart F—Environmental Review Process: Environmental Impact Statement Determinations



[top](#)

##### § 58.52 Adoption of other agencies' EISs.



[top](#)

The responsible entity may adopt a draft or final EIS prepared by another agency provided that the EIS was prepared in accordance with 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508. If the responsible entity adopts an EIS prepared by another agency, the procedure in 40 CFR 1506.3 shall be followed. An adopted EIS may have to be revised and modified to adapt it to the particular environmental conditions and circumstances of the project if these are different from the project reviewed in the EIS. In such cases the responsible entity must prepare, circulate, and file a supplemental draft EIS in the manner prescribed in § 58.60(d) and otherwise comply with the clearance and time requirements of the EIS process, except that scoping requirements under 40 CFR 1501.7 shall not apply. The agency that prepared the original EIS should be informed that the responsible entity intends to amend and adopt the EIS. The responsible entity may adopt an EIS when it acts as a cooperating agency in its preparation under 40 CFR 1506.3. The responsible entity is not required to re-circulate or file the EIS, but must complete the clearance process for the RROF. The decision to adopt an EIS shall be made a part of the project ERR.

##### § 58.53 Use of prior environmental impact statements.



[top](#)

Where any final EIS has been listed in the Federal Register for a project pursuant to this part, or where an nationwide or similar broad scale final EIS has been issued and the EIS anticipated a subsequent project requiring an environmental clearance, then no new EIS is required for the subsequent project if all the following conditions are met:

- a) The ERR contains a decision based on a finding pursuant to § 58.40 that the proposed project is not a new major Federal action significantly affecting the quality of the human environment. The decision shall include:



(1) References to the prior EIS and its evaluation of the environmental factors affecting the proposed subsequent action subject to NEPA;

(2) An evaluation of any environmental factors which may not have been previously assessed, or which may have significantly changed;

(3) An analysis showing that the proposed project is consistent with the location, use, and density assumptions for the site and with the timing and capacity of the circulation, utility, and other supporting infrastructure assumptions in the prior EIS;

(4) Documentation showing that where the previous EIS called for mitigating measures or other corrective action, these are completed to the extent reasonable given the current state of development.

(b) The prior final EIS has been filed within five (5) years, and updated as follows:

(1) The EIS has been updated to reflect any significant revisions made to the assumptions under which the original EIS was prepared;

(2) The EIS has been updated to reflect new environmental issues and data or legislation and implementing regulations which may have significant environmental impact on the project area covered by the prior EIS.

(c) There is no litigation pending in connection with the prior EIS, and no final judicial finding of inadequacy of the prior EIS has been made.

#### **Subpart G—Environmental Review Process: Procedures for Draft, Final and Supplemental Environmental Impact Statements**



[top](#)

#### **§ 58.55 Notice of intent to prepare an EIS.**



[top](#)

As soon as practicable after the responsible entity decides to prepare an EIS, it must publish a NOI/EIS, using the HUD recommended format and disseminate it in the same manner as required by 40 CFR parts 1500 through 1508.

#### **§ 58.56 Scoping process.**



[top](#)

The determination on whether or not to hold a scoping meeting will depend on the same circumstances and factors as for the holding of public hearings under §58.59. The responsible entity must wait at least 15 days after disseminating or publishing the NOI/EIS before holding a scoping meeting.

#### **§ 58.57 Lead agency designation.**



[top](#)

If there are several agencies ready to assume the lead role, the responsible entity must make its decision based on the criteria in 40 CFR 1501.5(c). If the responsible entity and a Federal agency are unable to reach agreement, then the responsible entity must notify HUD (or the State, where applicable). HUD (or the State) will assist in obtaining a determination based on the procedure set forth in 40 CFR 1501.5(e).



**58.59 Public hearings and meetings.**[top](#)

a) *Factors to consider.* In determining whether or not to hold public hearings in accordance with 40 CFR 506.6, the responsible entity must consider the following factors:

- 1) The magnitude of the project in terms of economic costs, the geographic area involved, and the uniqueness or size of commitment of resources involved.
- 2) The degree of interest in or controversy concerning the project.
- 3) The complexity of the issues and the likelihood that information will be presented at the hearing which will be of assistance to the responsible entity.
- 4) The extent to which public involvement has been achieved through other means.

b) *Procedure.* All public hearings must be preceded by a notice of public hearing, which must be published in the local news media 15 days before the hearing date. The Notice must:

- 1) State the date, time, place, and purpose of the hearing or meeting.
- 2) Describe the project, its estimated costs, and the project area.
- 3) State that persons desiring to be heard on environmental issues will be afforded the opportunity to be heard.
- 4) State the responsible entity's name and address and the name and address of its Certifying Officer.
- 5) State what documents are available, where they can be obtained, and any charges that may apply.

**58.60 Preparation and filing of environmental impact statements.**[top](#)

a) The responsible entity must prepare the draft environmental impact statement (DEIS) and the final environmental impact statements (FEIS) using the current HUD recommended format or its equivalent.

b) The responsible entity must file and distribute the (DEIS) and the (FEIS) in the following manner:

- 1) Five copies to EPA Headquarters;
- 2) Five copies to EPA Regional Office;
- 3) Copies made available in the responsible entity's and the recipient's office;
- 4) Copies or summaries made available to persons who request them; and
- 5) FEIS only—one copy to State, HUD Field Office, and HUD Headquarters library.

c) The responsible entity may request waivers from the time requirements specified for the draft and final EIS as prescribed in 40 CFR 1506.6.

d) When substantial changes are proposed in a project or when significant new circumstances or information becomes available during an environmental review, the recipient may prepare a supplemental EIS as prescribed in 40 CFR 1502.9.



(e) The responsible entity must prepare a Record of Decision (ROD) as prescribed in 40 CFR 1505.2.

[61 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 63 FR 15272, Mar. 30, 1998]

#### Subpart H—Release of Funds for Particular Projects



[top](#)

#### § 58.70 Notice of intent to request release of funds.



[top](#)

The NOI/RROF must be disseminated and/or published in the manner prescribed by §58.43 and §58.45 before the certification is signed by the responsible entity.

#### § 58.71 Request for release of funds and certification.



[top](#)

(a) The RROF and certification shall be sent to the appropriate HUD Field Office (or the State, if applicable), except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section. This request shall be executed by the Certifying Officer. The request shall describe the specific project and activities covered by the request and contain the certification required under the applicable statute cited in §58.1(b). The RROF and certification must be in a form specified by HUD.

(b) When the responsible entity is conducting an environmental review on behalf of a recipient, as provided for in §58.10, the recipient must provide the responsible entity with all available project and environmental information and refrain from undertaking any physical activities or choice limiting actions until HUD (or the State, if applicable) has approved its request for release of funds. The certification form executed by the responsible entity's certifying officer shall be sent to the recipient that is to receive the assistance along with a description of any special environmental conditions that must be adhered to in carrying out the project. The recipient is to submit the RROF and the certification of the responsible entity to HUD (or the State, if applicable) requesting the release of funds. The recipient must agree to abide by the special conditions, procedures and requirements of the environmental review, and to advise the responsible entity of any proposed change in the scope of the project or any change in environmental conditions.

(c) If the responsible entity determines that some of the activities are exempt under applicable provisions of this part, the responsible entity shall advise the recipient that it may commit funds for these activities as soon as programmatic authorization is received. This finding shall be documented in the ERR maintained by the responsible entity and in the recipient's project files.

#### § 58.72 HUD or State actions on RROFs and certifications.



[top](#)

The actions which HUD (or a State) may take with respect to a recipient's environmental certification and RROF are as follows:

(a) In the absence of any receipt of objection to the contrary, except as provided in paragraph (b) of this section, HUD (or the State) will assume the validity of the certification and RROF and will approve these documents after expiration of the 15-day period prescribed by statute.

(b) HUD (or the state) may disapprove a certification and RROF if it has knowledge that the responsible entity or other participants in the development process have not complied with the items in §58.75, or if the RROF and certification are inaccurate.



c) In cases in which HUD has approved a certification and RROF but subsequently learns (e.g., through monitoring) that the recipient violated §58.22 or the recipient or responsible entity otherwise failed to comply with a clearly applicable environmental authority, HUD shall impose appropriate remedies and sanctions in accord with the law and regulations for the program under which the violation was found.

51 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56130, Sept. 29, 2003]

#### **58.73 Objections to release of funds.**



[top](#)

HUD (or the State) will not approve the RROF for any project before 15 calendar days have elapsed from the time of receipt of the RROF and the certification or from the time specified in the notice published pursuant to §58.70, whichever is later. Any person or agency may object to a recipient's RROF and the related certification. However, the objections must meet the conditions and procedures set forth in subpart H of this part. HUD (or the State) can refuse the RROF and certification on any grounds set forth in §58.75. All decisions by HUD (or the State) regarding the RROF and the certification shall be final.

#### **58.74 Time for objecting.**



[top](#)

All objections must be received by HUD (or the State) within 15 days from the time HUD (or the State) receives the recipient's RROF and the related certification, or within the time period specified in the notice, whichever is later.

#### **58.75 Permissible bases for objections.**



[top](#)

HUD (or the State), will consider objections claiming a responsible entity's noncompliance with this part based only on any of the following grounds:

- a) The certification was not in fact executed by the responsible entity's Certifying Officer.
- b) The responsible entity has failed to make one of the two findings pursuant to §58.40 or to make the written determination required by §§58.35, 58.47 or 58.53 for the project, as applicable.
- c) The responsible entity has omitted one or more of the steps set forth at subpart E of this part for the preparation, publication and completion of an EA.
- d) The responsible entity has omitted one or more of the steps set forth at subparts F and G of this part for the conduct, preparation, publication and completion of an EIS.
- e) The recipient or other participants in the development process have committed funds, incurred costs for undertaken activities not authorized by this part before release of funds and approval of the environmental certification by HUD (or the state).
- f) Another Federal agency acting pursuant to 40 CFR part 1504 has submitted a written finding that the project is unsatisfactory from the standpoint of environmental quality.

51 FR 19122, Apr. 30, 1996, as amended at 68 FR 56130, Sept. 29, 2003]

#### **58.76 Procedure for objections.**



[top](#)



A person or agency objecting to a responsible entity's RROF and certification shall submit objections in writing to HUD (or the State). The objections shall:

(a) Include the name, address and telephone number of the person or agency submitting the objection, and be signed by the person or authorized official of an agency.

(b) Be dated when signed.

(c) Describe the basis for objection and the facts or legal authority supporting the objection.

(d) State when a copy of the objection was mailed or delivered to the responsible entity's Certifying Officer.

#### § 58.77 Effect of approval of certification.



(a) *Responsibilities of HUD and States.* HUD's (or, where applicable, the State's) approval of the certification shall be deemed to satisfy the responsibilities of the Secretary under NEPA and related provisions of law cited at §58.5 insofar as those responsibilities relate to the release of funds as authorized by the applicable provisions of law cited in §58.1(b).

(b) *Public and agency redress.* Persons and agencies seeking redress in relation to environmental reviews covered by an approved certification shall deal with the responsible entity and not with HUD. It is HUD's policy to refer all inquiries and complaints to the responsible entity and its Certifying Officer. Similarly, the State (where applicable) may direct persons and agencies seeking redress in relation to environmental reviews covered by an approved certification to deal with the responsible entity, and not the State, and may refer inquiries and complaints to the responsible entity and its Certifying Officer. Remedies for noncompliance are set forth in program regulations.

(c) *Implementation of environmental review decisions.* Projects of a recipient will require post-review monitoring and other inspection and enforcement actions by the recipient and the State or HUD (using procedures provided for in program regulations) to assure that decisions adopted through the environmental review process are carried out during project development and implementation.

(d) *Responsibility for monitoring and training.* (1) At least once every three years, HUD intends to conduct in-depth monitoring and exercise quality control (through training and consultation) over the environmental activities performed by responsible entities under this part. Limited monitoring of these environmental activities will be conducted during each program monitoring site visit. If through limited or in-depth monitoring of these environmental activities or by other means, HUD becomes aware of any environmental deficiencies, HUD may take one or more of the following actions:

(i) In the case of problems found during limited monitoring, HUD may schedule in-depth monitoring at an earlier date or may schedule in-depth monitoring more frequently;

(ii) HUD may require attendance by staff of the responsible entity at HUD-sponsored or approved training, which will be provided periodically at various locations around the country;

(iii) HUD may refuse to accept the certifications of environmental compliance on subsequent grants;

(iv) HUD may suspend or terminate the responsible entity's assumption of the environmental review responsibility;

(v) HUD may initiate sanctions, corrective actions, or other remedies specified in program regulations or agreements or contracts with the recipient.

2) HUD's responsibilities and action under paragraph (d)(1) of this section shall not be construed to limit or decrease any responsibility assumed by a responsible entity with respect to any particular release of pollutants under this part. Whether or not HUD takes action under paragraph (d)(1) of this section, the



Certifying Officer remains the responsible Federal official under §58.13 with respect to projects and activities for which the Certifying Officer has submitted a certification under this part.

[Browse Previous](#) | [Browse Next](#)

---

For questions or comments regarding e-CFR editorial content, features, or design, email [ecfr@nara.gov](mailto:ecfr@nara.gov).

For questions concerning e-CFR programming and delivery issues, email [webteam@gpo.gov](mailto:webteam@gpo.gov).

[Section 508 / Accessibility](#)



**Item: V**  
**Conflict of Interest**  
**Regulation and Guidance**







## HUD CDBG Conflict of Interest Regulation

### 24 CFR Part 570.489(g)

(g) *Procurement.* When procuring property or services to be paid for in whole or in part with CDBG funds, the state shall follow its procurement policies and procedures. The state shall establish requirements for procurement policies and procedures for units of general local government, based on full and open competition. Methods of procurement (e.g., small purchase, sealed bids/formal advertising, competitive proposals, and noncompetitive proposals) and their applicability shall be specified by the state. Cost plus a percentage of cost and percentage of construction costs methods of contracting shall not be used. The policies and procedures shall also include standards of conduct governing employees engaged in the award or administration of contracts. (Other conflicts of interest are covered by §570.489(h).) The state shall ensure that all purchase orders and contracts include any clauses required by Federal statutes, executive orders and implementing regulations.

### 24 CFR Part 570.489(h)

(h) *Conflict of interest* —(1) *Applicability.* (i) In the procurement of supplies, equipment, construction, and services by the States, units of local general governments, and subrecipients, the conflict of interest provisions in paragraph (g) of this section shall apply.

(ii) In all cases not governed by paragraph (g) of this section, this paragraph (h) shall apply. Such cases include the acquisition and disposition of real property and the provision of assistance with CDBG funds by the unit of general local government or its subrecipients, to individuals, businesses and other private entities.

(2) *Conflicts prohibited.* Except for eligible administrative or personnel costs, the general rule is that no persons described in paragraph (h)(3) of this section who exercise or have exercised any functions or responsibilities with respect to CDBG activities assisted under this subpart or who are in a position to participate in a decisionmaking process or gain inside information with regard to such activities, may obtain a financial interest or benefit from the activity, or have an interest or benefit from the activity, or have an interest in any contract, subcontract or agreement with respect thereto, or the proceeds thereunder, either for themselves or those with whom they have family or business ties, during their tenure or for one year thereafter.

(3) *Persons covered.* The conflict of interest provisions for paragraph (h)(2) of this section apply to any person who is an employee, agent, consultant, officer, or elected official or appointed official of the state, or of a unit of general local government, or of any designated public agencies, or subrecipients which are receiving CDBG funds.

(4) *Exceptions: Thresholds requirements.* Upon written request by the State, an exception to the provisions of paragraph (h)(2) of this section involving an employee, agent, consultant, officer, or elected official or appointed official of the state may be granted by HUD on a case-by-case basis. In all other cases, the state may grant such an exception upon written request of the unit of general local government provided the state shall fully document its determination in compliance with all requirements of paragraph (h)(4) of this section including the state's position with respect to each factor at paragraph (h)(5) of this section and such documentation shall be available for review by the public and by HUD. An exception may be granted after it is determined that such an exception will serve to further the purpose of the Act and the effective and efficient administration of the program or project of the state or unit of general local government as appropriate. An exception may be considered only after the state or unit of general local government, as appropriate, has provided the following:

(i) A disclosure of the nature of the conflict, accompanied by an assurance that there has been public disclosure of the conflict and a description of how the public disclosure was made; and

(ii) An opinion of the attorney for the state or the unit of general local government, as appropriate, that the interest for which the exception is sought would not violate state or local law.

(5) *Factors to be considered for exceptions.* In determining whether to grant a requested exception after the requirements of paragraph (h)(4) of this section have been satisfactorily met, the cumulative effect of the following factors, where applicable, shall be considered:



## HUD CDBG Conflict of Interest Regulation

- (i) Whether the exception would provide a significant cost benefit or an essential degree of expertise to the program or project which would otherwise not be available;
- (ii) Whether an opportunity was provided for open competitive bidding or negotiation;
- (iii) Whether the person affected is a member of a group or class of low or moderate income persons intended to be the beneficiaries of the assisted activity, and the exception will permit such person to receive generally the same interests or benefits as are being made available or provided to the group or class;
- (iv) Whether the affected person has withdrawn from his or her functions or responsibilities, or the decisionmaking process with respect to the specific assisted activity in question;
- (v) Whether the interest or benefit was present before the affected person was in a position as described in paragraph (h)(3) of this section;
- (vi) Whether undue hardship will result either to the State or the unit of general local government or the person affected when weighed against the public interest served by avoiding the prohibited conflict; and
- (vii) Any other relevant considerations.



## **Conflict of Interest Regulations**

### **Excerpt from 24 CFR Part 85, Section 85.36(b)(3), "Code of Conduct":**

Grantees and sub-grantees will maintain a written code of standards of conduct governing the performance of their employees engaged in the award and administration of contracts. No employee, officer or agent of the grantee or sub-grantee shall participate in selection, or in the award or administration of a contract supported by Federal funds if a conflict of interest, real or apparent, would be involved. Such a conflict would arise when:

- (i) The employee, officer or agent;
- (ii) Any member of his immediate family;
- (iii) His or her partner, or
- (iv) An organization which employs, or is about to employ, any of the above, has a financial or other interest in the firm selected for award. The grantee's or sub-grantee's officers, employees or agents will neither solicit nor accept gratuities, favors or anything of monetary value from contractors, potential contractors or parties to sub-agreements. Grantee and sub-grantees may set minimum rules where the financial interest is not substantial or the gift is an unsolicited item of nominal intrinsic value. To the extent permitted by State or local law or regulations, such standards or conduct will provide for penalties, sanctions, or other disciplinary actions for violations of such standards by the grantee's and sub-grantee's officers, employees, or agents, or by contractors or their agents. The awarding agency may in regulation provide additional prohibitions relative to real, apparent or potential conflicts of interest.

### **HUD Regulations, 24 CFR Part 570.489(h), "Conflict of Interest"**

#### **(1) Applicability -**

(i) In the procurement of supplies, equipment, construction, and services by recipients, and by subrecipients, the conflict of interest provisions of .... [24 CFR, Part 85, Section 85.36(b)(3) (above provisions)] shall apply.

(ii) In all cases not governed by .... [24 CFR, Part 85, Section 85.36(b)(3)], the provisions of this paragraph (section) ... shall apply. Such cases include the acquisition and disposition of real property and the provision of assistance with CDBG funds by the unit of general local government or its subrecipients, to individuals, businesses and other private entities.

#### **(2) Conflicts prohibited -**

Except for eligible administrative or personnel costs, the general rule is that no persons described in paragraph (h)(3) of this section who exercise or have exercised any functions or responsibilities with respect to CDBG activities assisted under this subpart or who are in a position to participate in a decision making process or gain inside information with regard to such activities may obtain a financial interest or benefit from the activity, or have an interest or benefit from the activity or have an interest in any contract, subcontract or agreement with respect thereto, or the proceeds thereunder, either for themselves or those with whom they have family or business ties, during their tenure or for one year thereafter.

#### **(3) Persons covered -**

The conflict of interest provisions of paragraph (h)(2) of this section apply to any person



who is an employee, agent, consultant, officer, or elected official or appointed official of the State or of a unit of general local government or of any designated public agencies or subrecipients which are receiving CDBG funds.

(4) Exceptions: threshold requirements -

Upon the written request by the State an exception to the provisions of paragraph (h)(2) of this section involving an employee, agent, consultant, officer, or elected official or appointed official of the State may be granted by HUD on a case-by-case basis. In all other cases, the State may grant such an exception upon written request of the unit of general local government provided the State shall fully document its determination in compliance with all requirements of paragraph (h)(4) of this section including the State's position with respect to each factor at paragraph (h)(5) of this section and such documentation shall be available for review by the public and by HUD. An exception may be granted after it is determined that such an exception will serve to further the purpose of the Act and the effective and efficient administration of the program or project of the State or unit of general local government as appropriate. An exception may be considered only after the State or unit of general local government, as appropriate, has provided the following:

- (i) A disclosure of the nature of the conflict, accompanied by an assurance that there has been public disclosure of the conflict and a description of how the public disclosure was made; and
- (ii) An opinion of the attorney for the State or the unit of general local government, as appropriate, that the interest for which the exception is sought would not violate State or local law.

(5) Factors to be considered for exceptions -

In determining whether to grant a requested exception after the requirements of (h)(4) of this section have been satisfactorily met, the cumulative effect of the following factors, where applicable, shall be considered:

- (i) Whether the exception would provide a significant cost benefit or an essential degree of expertise to the program or project which would otherwise not be available:
- (ii) Whether an opportunity was provided for open competitive bidding or negotiation:
- (iii) Whether the person affected is a member of a group or class of low or moderate income persons intended to be the beneficiaries of the assisted activity, and the exception will permit such person to receive generally the same interests or benefits as are being made available or provided to the group or class:
- (iv) Whether the affected person has withdrawn from his or her functions or responsibilities, or the decision making process with respect to the specific assisted activity in question:
- (v) Whether the interest or benefit was present before the affected person was in a position as described in paragraph (h)(3) of this section:
- (vi) Whether undue hardship will result either to the State or the unit of general local



government or the person affected when weighed against the public interest served by avoiding the prohibited conflict; and

(vii) Any other relevant considerations.



## GUIDANCE ON THE CONFLICT OF INTEREST PROHIBITION

The Department of Community Affairs (DCA) interprets this regulation in its broadest sense. DCA applies the ordinary meaning of the term "family or business ties" as follows:

- **Family:** "A group of people related by ancestry or marriage; relatives."
- **Business:** "The buying and selling of commodities and services; commerce, trade."
- **Ties:** "Something that connects, binds or joins; bond; link."

In any situation arguably falling within the conflicts prohibited by 24 CFR Part 570.489(h)(2), as interpreted by DCA, the CDBG or HOME/CHIP Applicant or Recipient should immediately contact DCA for guidance.

Applicants must include information about any possible conflict of interest situations in their Applications and explain how the regulation will be met. Exceptions will be considered if such applications are funded.

DCA will make every effort to grant exceptions to the general conflict of interest prohibition, within the authority of 24 CFR Part 489(h)(4) and (h)(5), where prior public disclosure has occurred.

In accordance with 24 CFR Part 489(h)(5), DCA must consider the cumulative effect of the following factors, where applicable, in determining whether to grant an exception:

- i. Whether the exception would provide a significant cost benefit or an essential degree of expertise to the program or project which would otherwise not be available;
- ii. Whether an opportunity was provided for open competitive bidding or negotiation;
- iii. Whether the person affected is a member of a group or class of low or moderate income persons intended to be the beneficiaries of the assisted activity, and the exception will permit such person to receive generally the same interests or benefits as are being made available or provided to the group or class.
- iv. Whether the affected person has withdrawn from his or her functions or responsibilities, or the decision-making process with respect to the specific assisted activity in question;
- v. Whether the interest or benefit was present before the affected person was in a position as described in paragraph (h)(3) of this section;
- vi. Whether the undue hardship will result either to the State or the unit of general local government or the person affected when weighed against the public interest served by avoiding the prohibited conflict; and
- vii. Any other relevant considerations.

However, it should be noted that exceptions are not always granted. To avoid the risk of having to make reimbursements to DCA, CDBG and HOME/CHIP, recipients are advised that requests for exceptions should be submitted and considered by DCA before federal funds are expended.

To seek such an exception, a written request for an exception must be submitted by the unit of local government which:



- Fully discloses the conflict or potential conflict of interest, prior to the unit of government undertaking any action which results or may result in a conflict of interest, real or apparent; and
- A description as to how the conflict of interest was publicly disclosed and a written opinion of the local government's attorney that the interest for which the exception is sought would not violate state or local law must accompany the request.







**Item: VI**  
**Section 104(d) Definitions**







## Exhibit VII

### Section 104(d) Definitions

Section 104(d) of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, as amended, and HUD regulations require CDBG recipients to utilize certain definitions to determine if the "one-for-one" replacement of low and moderate income housing units is required. This Exhibit to the CDBG Recipients Manual provides the definitions that DCA uses. Should a CDBG recipient wish to deviate from the following definitions it will be necessary to obtain prior approval from DCA.

1. **Standard Condition:**

The structural/mechanical conditions of a dwelling unit comply with a locally adopted housing code (if appropriate) and/or, at a minimum, the Housing Quality Standards of the Section 8 Housing Assistance Payments Program.

2. **Substandard Condition:**

The structural/mechanical conditions of a dwelling unit do not comply with a locally adopted housing code (if appropriate) or, at a minimum, the Housing Quality Standards of the Section 8 Housing Assistance Payments Program.

3. **Substandard Condition Suitable for Rehabilitation:**

The structural/mechanical conditions of a dwelling unit do not comply with a locally adopted housing code (if appropriate) or, at a minimum, the Housing Quality Standards of the Section 8 Housing Assistance Payments Program. However, the dwelling unit is determined to be "structurally feasible for rehabilitation" according to the Housing Rehabilitation Feasibility Test.

4. **Occupiable Dwelling Unit:**

Dwelling unit is in "Standard Condition" or "Substandard Condition Suitable for Rehabilitation" (See above.)

5. **Vacant Occupiable Dwelling Unit:**

A vacant dwelling unit that is in a "Standard Condition"; or vacant dwelling unit that is in a "Substandard Condition Suitable for Rehabilitation"; or a dwelling unit in any condition that has been legally occupied at any time within the period beginning 3 months before the date of execution of the contract covering the rehabilitation or demolition of the unit.

6. **Unoccupiable:**

Substandard dwelling unit is dilapidated and does not meet the "Structural Feasibility" of the Housing Rehabilitation Feasibility Test.

7. **Low-moderate-income dwelling unit:**

A dwelling unit with a market rent (including utility costs) that does not exceed the applicable HUD Fair Market Rent (FMR) for existing housing.







**Item: VII**  
**Guide From Residential**  
**Anti-Displacement and**  
**Relocation Assistance Plan**







Exhibit IX

GUIDEFORM RESIDENTIAL ANTIDISPLACEMENT AND RELOCATION  
ASSISTANCE PLAN

*(To be submitted to DCA before the demolition or conversion of any occupied or vacant occupable low and moderate income dwelling unit)*

The [recipient] will replace all occupied and "vacant occupable" "low/moderate income housing" demolished or converted to a use other than as lower income housing in connection with a project assisted with funds provided under the Community Development Block Grant program.

All replacement housing will be provided within three years after the commencement of the demolition or conversion. Before entering into a contract committing the [recipient] to provide funds for a project that will directly result in demolition or conversion, the [recipient] will make public by [describe how, such as publication in a newspaper of general circulation] and submit to Georgia Department of Community Affairs, the following information in writing:

1. A description of the proposed project;
2. The address, number of bedrooms, and location on a map of low/moderate income housing that will be demolished or converted to a use other than as lower income housing as a result of an assisted project;  
*(See Attached Residential Antidisplacement Plan Spreadsheet)*
3. A time schedule for the commencement and completion of the demolition or conversion;  
*(See Attached Residential Antidisplacement Plan Spreadsheet)*
4. To the extent known, the address, number of bedrooms and location on a map of the replacement housing that has been or will be provided;  
*(See Attached Residential Antidisplacement Plan Spreadsheet)*
5. Verification from funding source of the address and number of bedrooms, with a time schedule, for the provision of the replacement housing;
6. Verification from a qualified source that the replacement housing units' rent and utilities are below "fair market rent";
7. The basis for concluding that the replacement housing will remain low and moderate income housing for at least 10 years from the date of initial occupancy (i.e. the demographics of neighborhood);
8. Information demonstrating that any proposed replacement of housing units with smaller dwelling units (e.g., a 2-bedroom unit with two 1-bedroom units), or any proposed replacement of efficiency or single-room occupancy (SRO) units with units of a different size, is appropriate and consistent with the housing needs and priorities identified in the approved Consolidated Plan).



To the extent that the specific location of the replacement housing and other data in items 4 through 8 are not available at the time of the submission, the [recipient] will identify the general location of such housing on a map and complete the disclosure and submission requirements as soon as the specific data are available.

The [name and phone number of the office] is responsible for tracking the replacement lower income housing and ensuring that it is provided within the required period.

The [name and phone number of the office] is responsible for providing relocation payments and other relocation assistance to any low/moderate income person displaced by demolition of any housing or the conversion of lower income housing to another use.

Consistent with the goals and objectives of activities assisted under the Act, the [recipient] will take the following steps to minimize the direct and indirect displacement of persons from their homes (list only the steps the Recipient intends to take, the following are examples.)

1. Coordinate code enforcement with rehabilitation and housing assistance programs.
2. Evaluate housing codes and rehabilitation standards in reinvestment areas to prevent undue financial burden on established owners and tenants.
3. Stage rehabilitation of apartment units to allow tenants to remain in the building/complex during and after the rehabilitation, working with empty units first.
4. Arrange for facilities to house persons who must be relocated temporarily during rehabilitation and reconstruction.
5. Adopt policies to identify and mitigate displacement resulting from intensive public investment in neighborhoods.
6. Adopt policies which provide reasonable protection for tenants faced with conversion to a condominium or cooperative.
7. Adopt tax assessment policies, such as deferred tax payment plans, to reduce impact of increasing property tax assessments on lower income owner-occupants or tenants in revitalizing areas.
8. Establish counseling centers to provide homeowners and tenants with information on assistance available to help them remain in their neighborhood in the face of revitalization pressures.
9. Execute a Rent Regulatory Agreement that limits rent and utilities below "Fair Market Rent" and within tenant's "financial means". (Required for all rental rehabilitation projects)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date of Submission to DCA

\_\_\_\_\_  
Signature of Authorized Representative

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date of Submission of CDBG Application



# RESIDENTIAL ANTIDISPLACEMENT PLAN

<u>Demolished/Converted Units</u>					<u>Replacement Units</u>				
Address	Map #	# BR	Start Date	Completion Date	Address	Map #	# BR	Construction Date	Funding Resource
1.					1.				
2.					2.				
3.					3.				
4.					4.				
5.					5.				
6.					6.				
7.					7.				
8.					8.				
9.					9.				
10.					10.				
11.					11.				
12.					12.				







**Item: VIII**  
**Georgia Public Works**  
**Construction Law**  
**(OCGA 36-91-1 through 36-91-95)**







**APPENDIX A**  
**Georgia Local Government Public Works Construction Law**  
(O.C.G.A. § 36-91-1 through §36-91-95)

36-91-1

This chapter shall be known and may be cited as the "Georgia Local Government Public Works Construction Law."

36-91-2

As used in this chapter, the term:

(1) "Bid bond" means a bond with good and sufficient surety or sureties for the faithful acceptance of the contract payable to, in favor of, and for the protection of the governmental entity for which the contract is to be awarded.

(2) "Change order" means an alteration, addition, or deduction from the original scope of work as defined by the contract documents to address changes or unforeseen conditions necessary for project completion.

(3) "Competitive sealed bidding" means a method of soliciting public works construction contracts whereby the award is based upon the lowest responsive, responsible bid in conformance with the provisions of subsection (b) of Code Section 36-91-21.

(4) "Competitive sealed proposals" means a method of soliciting public works contracts whereby the award is based upon criteria identified in a request for proposals in conformance with the provisions of subsection (c) of Code Section 36-91-21.

(5) "Emergency" means any situation resulting in imminent danger to the public health or safety or the loss of an essential governmental service.

(6) "Governing authority" means the official or group of officials responsible for governance of a governmental entity.

(7) "Governmental entity" means a county, municipal corporation, consolidated government, authority, board of education, or other public board, body, or commission but shall not include any authority, board, department, or commission of the state, or a public transportation agency as defined by Chapter 9 of Title 32.

(8) "Payment bond" means a bond with good and sufficient surety or sureties payable to the governmental entity for which the work is to be done and intended for the use and protection of all subcontractors and all persons supplying labor, materials, machinery, and equipment in the prosecution of the work provided for in the public works construction contract.

(9) "Performance bond" means a bond with good and sufficient surety or sureties for the faithful performance of the contract and to indemnify the governmental entity for any damages occasioned by a failure to perform the same within the prescribed time. Such bond shall be payable to, in favor of, and for the protection of the governmental entity for which the work is to be done.

(10) "Public works construction" means the building, altering, repairing, improving, or demolishing of any public structure or building or other public improvements of any kind to any public real property other



than those projects covered by Chapter 4 of Title 32. Such term does not include the routine operation, repair, or maintenance of existing structures, buildings, or real property.

(11) "Responsible bidder" or "responsible offeror" means a person or entity that has the capability in all respects to perform fully and reliably the contract requirements.

(12) "Responsive bidder" or "responsive offeror" means a person or entity that has submitted a bid or proposal that conforms in all material respects to the requirements set forth in the invitation for bids or request for proposals.

(13) "Scope of project" means the work required by the original contract documents and any subsequent change orders required or appropriate to accomplish the intent of the project as described in the bid documents.

(14) "Scope of work" means the work that is required by the contract documents.

(15) "Sole source" means those procurements made pursuant to a written determination by a governing authority that there is only one source for the required supply, service, or construction item.

36-91-20.

(a) All public works construction contracts subject to this chapter entered into by a governmental entity with private persons or entities shall be in writing and on file and available for public inspection at a place designated by such governmental entity. Municipalities and consolidated governments shall execute and enter into contracts in the manner provided in applicable local legislation or by ordinance.

(b) Prior to entering into a public works construction contract other than those exempted by Code Section 36-91-22, a governmental entity shall publicly advertise the contract opportunity.

Such notice shall be posted conspicuously in the governing authority's office and shall be advertised in the legal organ of the county or by electronic means on an Internet website of the governmental entity or an Internet website identified by the governmental entity. Contract opportunities shall be advertised a minimum of two times, with the first advertisement occurring at least four weeks prior to the opening of the sealed bids or proposals. The second advertisement shall follow no earlier than two weeks from the first advertisement. Plans and specifications shall be available on the first day of the advertisement and shall be open to inspection by the public. The advertisement shall include such details and specifications as will enable the public to know the extent and character of the work to be done. All required notices of advertisement shall also advise of any mandatory prequalification requirements or pre-bid conferences as well as any federal requirements pursuant to subsection (d) of Code Section 36-91-22.

(c) Governmental entities are authorized to utilize any construction delivery method, provided that all public works construction contracts subject to the requirements of this chapter that:

(1) Place the bidder or offeror at risk for construction; and

(2) Require labor or building materials in the execution of the contract

shall be awarded on the basis of competitive sealed bidding or competitive sealed proposals. Governmental entities shall have the authority to reject any and all bids or proposals and to waive technicalities and informalities.

(d) No governmental entity shall issue or cause to be issued any addenda modifying plans and specifications within a period of 72 hours prior to the advertised time for the opening bids or proposals, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays. However, if the necessity arises to issue an addendum modifying plans and specifications within the 72 hour period prior to the advertised time for the



opening of bids or proposals, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays, then the opening of bids or proposals shall be extended at least 72 hours, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays, from the date of the original bid or proposal opening without need to readvertise as required by subsection (b) of this Code section

(e) Bid and contract documents may contain provisions authorizing the issuance of change orders, without the necessity of additional requests for bids or proposals, within the scope of the project when appropriate or necessary in the performance of the contract. Change orders may not be used to evade the purposes of this article.

(f) Any governmental entity may, in its discretion, adopt a process for mandatory prequalification of prospective bidders or offerors; provided, however, that:

- (1) Criteria for prequalification must be reasonably related to the project or the quality of work;
- (2) Criteria for prequalification must be available to any prospective bidder or offeror requesting such information;
- (3) Any prequalification process must include a method of notifying prospective bidders or offerors of the criteria for prequalification; and
- (4) Any prequalification process must include a procedure for a disqualified bidder to respond to his or her disqualification to a representative of the governmental entity; provided, however, that such procedure shall not be construed to require the governmental entity to provide a formal appeals procedure.

36-91-21.

(a) It shall be unlawful to let out any public works construction contracts subject to the requirements of this chapter without complying with the competitive award requirements contained in this Code section. Any contractor who performs any work of the kind in any other manner and who knows that the public works construction contract was let out without complying with the notice and competitive award requirements of this chapter shall not be entitled to receive any payment for such work.

(b) Any competitive sealed bidding process shall comply with the following requirements:

- (1) The governmental entity shall publicly advertise an invitation for bids;
- (2) Bidders shall submit sealed bids based on the criteria set forth in such invitation;
- (3) The governmental entity shall open the bids publicly and evaluate such bids without discussions with the bidders; and
- (4) The contract shall be awarded to the lowest responsible and responsive bidder whose bid meets the requirements and criteria set forth in the invitation for bids; provided, however, that if the bid from the lowest responsible and responsive bidder exceeds the funds budgeted for the public works construction contract, the governmental entity may negotiate with such apparent low bidder to obtain a contract price within the budgeted amount. Such negotiations may include changes in the scope of work and other bid requirements.

(c)(1) In making any competitive sealed proposal, a governmental entity shall:

(A) Publicly advertise a request for proposals, which request shall include conceptual program information in the request for proposals describing the requested services in a level of detail appropriate to the project delivery method selected for the project, as well as the relative importance of the evaluation factors;

(B) Open all proposals received at the time and place designated in the request for proposals so as to avoid disclosure of contents to competing offerors during the process of negotiations; and

(C) Make an award to the responsible and responsive offeror whose proposal is determined in writing to be the most advantageous to the governmental entity, taking into consideration the evaluation factors set forth in the request for proposals. The evaluation factors shall be the basis on which the award decision is made. The contract file shall indicate the basis on which the award is made.



(2) As set forth in the request for proposals, offerors submitting proposals may be afforded an opportunity for discussion, negotiation, and revision of proposals. Discussions, negotiations, and revisions may be permitted after submission of proposals and prior to award for the purpose of obtaining best and final offers. In accordance with the request for proposals, all responsible offerors found by the governmental entity to have submitted proposals reasonably susceptible of being selected for award shall be given an opportunity to participate in such discussions, negotiations, and revisions. During the process of discussion, negotiation, and revision, the governmental entity shall not disclose the contents of proposals to competing offerors.

(d) Whenever a public works construction contract for any governmental entity subject to the requirements of this chapter is to be let out by competitive sealed bid or proposal, no person, by himself or herself or otherwise, shall prevent or attempt to prevent competition in such bidding or proposals by any means whatever. No person who desires to procure such work for himself or herself or for another shall prevent or endeavor to prevent anyone from making a bid or proposal therefor by any means whatever, nor shall such person so desiring the work cause or induce another to withdraw a bid or proposal for the work.

(e) Before commencing the work, any person who procures such public work by bidding or proposal shall make an oath in writing that he or she has not directly or indirectly violated subsection (d) of this Code section. The oath shall be filed by the officer whose duty it is to make the payment. If the contractor is a partnership, all of the partners and any officer, agent, or other person who may have represented or acted for them in bidding for or procuring the contract shall also make the oath. If the contractor is a corporation, all officers, agents, or other persons who may have acted for or represented the corporation in bidding for or procuring the contract shall make the oath. If such oath is false, the contract shall be void, and all sums paid by the governmental entity on the contract may be recovered by appropriate action.

(f) If any member of a governmental entity lets out any public works construction contract subject to the requirements of this article and receives, takes, or contracts to receive or take, either directly or indirectly, any part of the pay or profit arising out of any such contract, he or she shall be guilty of a misdemeanor.

(g) No public works construction contract with a governing authority shall be valid for any purpose unless the contractor shall comply with all bonding requirements of this chapter. No such contract shall be valid if any governmental entity lets out any public works construction contract subject to the requirements of this chapter without complying with the requirements of this chapter.

36-91-22.

(a) The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to public works construction projects, when the same can be performed at a cost of less than \$100,000.00. Public works construction projects shall not be subdivided in an effort to evade the provisions of this chapter.

(b) Any governmental entity having a correctional institution shall have the power and authority to purchase material for and use inmate labor in performing public works construction projects; and in such cases, this chapter shall not apply. Any governmental entity may contract with a governmental entity having a correctional institution for the use of inmate labor from such institution and use the inmates in the performance of any public works construction project; and in such cases, this chapter shall not apply.

(c) In the event that the labor used or to be used in a public works construction project is furnished at no expense by the state or federal government or any agency thereof, the governing authority shall have the power and authority to purchase material for such public works construction project and use the labor furnished free to the governmental entity; and in such case, this chapter shall not apply.



(d) Where a public works construction contract involves the expenditure of federal assistance or funds, the receipt of which is conditioned upon compliance with federal laws or regulations regarding the procedures for awarding public works construction contracts, a governmental entity shall comply with such federal requirements and shall not be required to comply with the provisions of this chapter that differ from the federal requirements. The governmental entity shall provide notice that federal procedures exist for the award of such contracts in the advertisement required by subsection (b) of Code Section 36-91-20. The availability and location of such federal requirements shall be provided to any person requesting such information.

(e) The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to public works construction projects necessitated by an emergency; provided, however, that the nature of the emergency shall be described in the minutes of the governing authority. Any contract let by a county pursuant to this subsection shall be ratified, as soon as practicable, on the minutes of the governing authority, and the nature of the emergency shall be described therein.

(f) Except as otherwise provided in Chapter 4 of Title 32, the requirements of this chapter shall not apply to public works construction projects subject to the requirements of Chapter 4 of Title 32.

(g) The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to public works construction projects or any portion of a public works construction project self-performed by a governmental entity. If the governmental entity contracts with a private person or entity for a portion of such project, the provisions of this chapter shall apply to any such contract estimated to exceed \$100,000.00.

(h) The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to sole source public works construction contracts.

(i) The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to hospital authorities; provided, however, that a public works construction contract entered into by a hospital authority shall be subject to the requirements of this chapter if, in connection with such contract, the hospital authority either:

(1) Incurs indebtedness and secures such indebtedness by pledging amounts to be received by such authority from one or more counties or municipalities through an intergovernmental contract entered into in accordance with Code Section 31-7-85; or

(2) Receives funds from the state or one or more counties or municipalities for the purpose of financing a public works construction project, which moneys are not for reimbursement of health services provided.

36-91-40.

(a)(1) Any bid bond, performance bond, payment bond, or security deposit required for a public works construction contract shall be approved and filed with the treasurer or the person performing the duties usually performed by a treasurer of the obligee named therein. At the option of the governmental entity, if the surety named in the bond is other than a surety company authorized by law to do business in this state pursuant to a current certificate of authority to transact surety business by the Commissioner of Insurance, such bond shall not be approved and filed unless such surety is on the United States Department of Treasury's list of approved bond sureties.

(2) Any bid bond, performance bond, or payment bond required by this Code section shall be approved as to form and as to the solvency of the surety by an officer of the governmental entity negotiating the contract on behalf of the governmental entity. In the case of a bid bond, such approval shall be obtained prior to acceptance of the bid or proposal. In the case of payment bonds and performance bonds, such approval shall be obtained prior to the execution of the contract.

(b) Whenever, in the judgment of the obligee:

(1) Any surety on a bid, performance, or payment bond has become insolvent;

(2) Any corporate surety is no longer certified or approved by the Commissioner of Insurance to do business in the state; or



(3) For any cause there are no longer proper or sufficient sureties on any or all of the bonds,

the obligee may require the contractor to strengthen any or all of the bonds or to furnish a new or additional bond or bonds within ten days. Thereupon, if so ordered by the obligee, all work on the contract shall cease unless such new or additional bond or bonds are furnished. If such bond or bonds are not furnished within such time, the obligee may terminate the contract and complete the same as the agent of and at the expense of the contractor and his or her sureties.

36-91-50.

(a) Bid bonds shall be required for all public works construction contracts subject to the requirements of this article with estimated bids or proposals over \$100,000.00; provided, however, that a governmental entity may require a bid bond for projects with estimated bids or proposals of \$100,000.00 or less.

(b) In the case of competitive sealed bids, except as provided in Code Sections 36-91-52 and 36-91-53, a bid may not be revoked or withdrawn until 60 days after the time set by the governmental entity for opening of bids. Upon expiration of this time period, the bid will cease to be valid, unless the bidder provides written notice to the governmental entity prior to the scheduled expiration date that the bid will be extended for a time period specified by the governmental entity.

(c) In the case of competitive sealed proposals, the governmental entity shall advise offerors in the request for proposals of the number of days that offerors will be required to honor their proposals; provided, however, that if an offeror is not selected within 60 days of opening the proposals, any offeror that is determined by the governmental entity to be unlikely of being selected for contract award shall be released from his or her proposal.

(d) If a governmental entity requires a bid bond for any public works construction contract, no bid or proposal for a contract with the governmental entity shall be valid for any purpose unless the contractor shall give a bid bond with good and sufficient surety or sureties approved by the governing authority. The bid bond shall be in the amount of not less than 5 percent of the total amount payable by the terms of the contract. No bid or proposal shall be considered if a proper bid bond or other security authorized in Code Section 36-91-51 has not been submitted. The provisions of this subsection shall not apply to any bid or proposal for a contract that is required by law to be accompanied by a proposal guaranty and shall not apply to any bid or proposal for a contract with any public agency or body which receives funding from the United States Department of Transportation and which is primarily engaged in the business of public transportation.

36-91-51.

(a) In lieu of the bid bond provided for in Code Section 36-91-50, the governmental entity may accept a cashier's check, certified check, or cash in the amount of not less than 5 percent of the total amount payable by the terms of the contract payable to and for the protection of the governmental entity for which the contract is to be awarded.

(b) When the amount of any bid bond required under this article does not exceed \$300,000.00, the governmental entity may, in its sole discretion, accept an irrevocable letter of credit issued by a bank or savings and loan association, as defined in Code Section 7-1-4, in the amount of and in lieu of the bond otherwise required under Code Section 36-91-50.

36-91-52.

(a) As used in this Code section, the term "bid" includes proposal and the term "bidder" includes offeror.

(b) Any governmental entity receiving bids subject to this article shall permit a bidder to withdraw a bid from consideration after the bid opening without forfeiture of the bid security if the bidder has made an appreciable error in the calculation of his or her bid and if:



(1) Such error in the calculation of his or her bid can be documented by clear and convincing written evidence.

(2) Such error can be clearly shown by objective evidence drawn from inspection of the original work papers, documents, or materials used in the preparation of the bid sought to be withdrawn.

(3) The bidder serves written notice upon the governmental entity which invited proposals for the work prior to the award of the contract and not later than 48 hours after the opening of bids, excluding Saturdays, Sundays, and legal holidays;

(4) The bid was submitted in good faith and the mistake was due to a calculation or clerical error, an inadvertent omission, or a typographical error as opposed to an error in judgment, and

(5) The withdrawal of the bid will not result in undue prejudice to the governmental entity or other bidders by placing them in a materially worse position than they would have occupied if the bid had never been submitted.

(c) In the event that an apparent successful bidder has withdrawn his or her bid as provided in subsection (b) of this Code section, action on the remaining bids should be considered as though the withdrawn bid had not been received. In the event the project is relet for bids, under no circumstances shall a bidder who has filed a request to withdraw a bid be permitted to resubmit a bid for the work.

(d) No bidder who is permitted to withdraw a bid pursuant to subsection (b) of this Code section shall for compensation supply any material or labor to, or perform any subcontract or other work agreement for, the person or firm to whom the contract is awarded or otherwise benefit, directly or indirectly, from the performance of the project for which the withdrawn bid was submitted.

36-91-53

(a) As used in this Code section, the term:

(1) "Affiliated corporation" means, with respect to any corporation, any other corporation related thereto:

(A) As a parent corporation;

(B) As a subsidiary corporation;

(C) As a sister corporation;

(D) By common ownership or control; or

(E) By control of one corporation by the other.

(2) The term "bid" includes proposals.

(b) In any case where two or more affiliated corporations bid for a contract under this Code section and any one or more of such affiliated corporations subsequently rescind or revoke their bid or bids in favor of another such affiliated corporation whose bid is for a higher amount and the contract is awarded at such higher amount to such other affiliated corporation, then the bid bond, proposal guaranty, or other security otherwise required under this article of each affiliated corporation rescinding or revoking its bid shall be forfeited.

36-91-54.

The obligee in any bid bond required to be given in accordance with this article shall be entitled to maintain an action thereon at any time upon any breach of such bond; provided, however, that no action may be instituted on the bonds or security deposits after one year from the completion of the contract and the acceptance of the public work by the governmental entity.



36-91-70.

Performance bonds shall be required for all public works construction contracts subject to the requirements of this chapter with an estimated contract amount greater than \$100,000.00; provided, however, that a governmental entity may require a performance bond for public works construction contracts that are estimated at \$100,000.00 or less. No public works construction contract requiring a performance bond shall be valid for any purpose unless the contractor shall give such performance bond. The performance bond shall be in the amount of at least the total amount payable by the terms of the contract and shall be increased as the contract amount is increased.

36-91-71.

When the amount of the performance bond required under this article does not exceed \$300,000.00 the governmental entity may, in its sole discretion, accept an irrevocable letter of credit by a bank or savings and loan association, as defined in Code Section 7-1-4, in the amount of and in lieu of the bond otherwise required under this article.

36-91-72.

The obligee in any performance bond required to be given in accordance with this article shall be entitled to maintain an action thereon at any time upon any breach of such bond; provided, however, no action can be instituted on the bonds or security deposits after one year from the completion of the contract and the acceptance of the public work by the governmental entity.

36-91-90.

Payment bonds shall be required for all public works construction contracts subject to the requirements of this chapter with an estimated contract amount greater than \$100,000.00; provided, however, that a governmental entity may require a payment bond for public works construction contracts that are estimated at \$100,000.00 or less. No public works construction contract requiring a payment bond shall be valid for any purpose, unless the contractor shall give such payment bond; provided, however, that, in lieu of such payment bond, the governmental entity, in its discretion, may accept a cashier's check, certified check, or cash for the use and protection of all subcontractors and all persons supplying labor, materials, machinery, and equipment in the prosecution of work provided in the contract. The payment bond or other security accepted in lieu of a payment bond shall be in the amount of at least the total amount payable by the terms of the initial contract and shall be increased if requested by the governmental entity as the contract amount is increased.

36-91-90.

Payment bonds shall be required for all public works construction contracts subject to the requirements of this chapter with an estimated contract amount greater than \$100,000.00; provided, however, that a governmental entity may require a payment bond for public works construction contracts that are estimated at \$100,000.00 or less. No public works construction contract requiring a payment bond shall be valid for any purpose, unless the contractor shall give such payment bond; provided, however, that, in lieu of such payment bond, the governmental entity, in its discretion, may accept a cashier's check, certified check, or cash for the use and protection of all subcontractors and all persons supplying labor, materials, machinery, and equipment in the prosecution of work provided in the contract. The payment bond or other security accepted in lieu of a payment bond shall be in the amount of at least the total amount payable by the terms of the initial contract and shall be increased if requested by the governmental entity as the contract amount is increased.

36-91-91.

If a payment bond or security deposit is not taken in the manner and form required in this article, the corporation or body for which work is done under the contract shall be liable to all subcontractors and to



all persons furnishing labor, skill, tools, machinery, or materials to the contractor or subcontractor thereunder for any loss resulting to them from such failure. No agreement, modification, or change in the contract, change in the work covered by the contract, or extension of time for the completion of the contract shall release the sureties of such payment bond

36-91-92

(a) The contractor furnishing the payment bond or security deposit shall post on the public works construction site and file with the clerk of the superior court in the county in which the site is located a notice of commencement no later than 15 days after the contractor physically commences work on the project and supply a copy of the notice of commencement to any subcontractor, materialman, or person who makes a written request of the contractor. Failure to supply a copy of the notice of commencement within ten calendar days of receipt of the written request from the subcontractor, materialman, or person shall render the provisions of paragraph (1) of subsection (a) of Code Section 36-91-93 inapplicable to the subcontractor, materialman, or person making the request. The notice of commencement shall include:

- (1) The name, address, and telephone number of the contractor;
- (2) The name and location of the public work being constructed or a general description of the improvement;
- (3) The name and address of the governmental entity that is contracting for the public works construction;
- (4) The name and address of the surety for the performance and payment bonds, if any; and
- (5) The name and address of the holder of the security deposit provided, if any.

(b) The failure to file a notice of commencement shall render the notice to contractor requirements of paragraph (1) of subsection (a) of Code Section 36-91-93 inapplicable.

(c) The clerk of the superior court shall file the notice of commencement within the records of that office and maintain an index separate from other real estate records or an index with the preliminary notices specified in subsection (a) of Code Section 44-14-361.3. Each such notice of commencement shall be indexed under the name of the governmental entity and the name of the contractor as contained in the notice of commencement.

36-91-93

(a) Every person entitled to the protection of the payment bond or security deposit required to be given who has not been paid in full for labor or material furnished in the prosecution of the work referred to in such bond or security deposit before the expiration of a period of 90 days after the day on which the last of the labor was done or performed by such person or the material or equipment or machinery was furnished or supplied by such person for which such claim is made, or when he or she has completed his or her subcontract for which claim is made, shall have the right to bring an action on such payment bond or security deposit for the amount, or the balance thereof, unpaid at the time of the commencement of such action and to prosecute such action to final execution and judgment for the sum or sums due such person; provided, however, that:

- (1) Any person having a direct contractual relationship with a subcontractor but no contractual relationship, express or implied, with the contractor furnishing such payment bond or security deposit on a public works construction project where the contractor has not complied with the notice of commencement requirements shall have the right of action upon the payment bond or security deposit upon giving written notice to the contractor within 90 days from the day on which such person did or performed the last of the labor or furnished the last of the material or machinery or equipment for which such claim is made, stating with substantial accuracy the amount claimed and the name of the party to whom the material was furnished or supplied or for whom the labor was performed or done. The notice to the contractor may be served by registered or certified mail, postage prepaid, or statutory overnight delivery, duly addressed to the



contractor, at any place at which the contractor maintains an office or conducts his or her business or at his or her residence, by depositing such notice in any post office or branch post office or any letter box under the control of the United States Postal Service; alternatively, notice may be served in any manner in which the sheriffs of this state are authorized by law to serve summons or process; and

- (2) Any person having a direct contractual relationship with a subcontractor but no contractual relationship, express or implied, with the contractor furnishing such payment bond or security deposit on a public works construction project where the contractor has complied with the notice of commencement requirements in accordance with subsection (a) of Code Section 36-91-92 shall have the right of action on the payment bond or security deposit, provided that such person shall, within 30 days from the filing of the notice of commencement or 30 days following the first delivery of labor, material, machinery, or equipment, whichever is later, give to the contractor a written notice setting forth:
  - (A) The name, address, and telephone number of the person providing labor, material, machinery, or equipment;
  - (B) The name and address of each person at whose instance the labor, material, machinery, or equipment is being furnished;
  - (C) The name and the location of the public works construction site; and
  - (D) A description of the labor, material, machinery, or equipment being provided and, if known, the contract price or anticipated value of the labor, material, machinery, or equipment to be provided or the amount claimed to be due, if any.
- (b) Nothing contained in this Code section shall limit the right of action of a person entitled to the protection of the payment bond or security deposit required to be given pursuant to this article to the 90 day period following the day on which such person did or performed the last of the labor or furnished the last of the material or machinery or equipment for which such claim is made.
- (c) Every action instituted under this Code section shall be brought in the name of the claimant without making the governmental entity for which the work was done or was to be done a party to such action.

36-91-94.

The official who has the custody of the bond or security deposit required by this article is authorized and directed to furnish to any person making application therefor a copy of the bond or security deposit agreement and the contract for which it was given, certified by the official who has custody of the bond or security deposit. With his or her application, such person shall also submit an affidavit that he or she has supplied labor or materials for such work and that payment therefor has not been made or that he or she is being sued on any such bond or security deposit. Such copy shall be primary evidence of the bond or security deposit and contract and shall be admitted in evidence without further proof. Applicants shall pay for such certified copies and such certified statements such fees as the official fixes to cover the cost of preparation thereof, provided that in no case shall the fee fixed exceed the fees which the clerks of the superior courts are permitted to charge for similar copies.

36-91-95.

No action can be instituted on the payment bonds or security deposits after one year from the completion of the contract and the acceptance of the public works construction by the proper public authorities. Every action instituted under this article shall be brought in the name of the claimant, without the governmental entity for which the work was done or was to be done being made a party thereto.



**Item: IX**  
**Required Construction Contract**  
**Provisions and Review Matrix**







**Sample CDBG Contract Conditions**  
***(Reprinted September 1, 2011)***

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
Section 3 Clause	2
Provision for Remedies Clause	3
Termination Clause	4
Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Clause	5
Standard Federal EEO Specifications (EO 11246)	7
Notice of Requirement for Affirmative Action	12
Certification of Nonsegregated Facilities	15
Standard Federal Labor Standards Provision	16
Contractor Certification Regarding Debarment, etc.	24
Clean Air and Clean Water Act Compliance	25
Performance, Payment and Bid Bonds	26
Contractor and Subcontractor Affidavit and Agreement (for compliance with O.C.G.A. 13-10-91)	27

***Be sure to have your local attorney review and approve all contract provisions.***



### **Section 3 Clause of the Urban Development Act of 1968**

- 1.) The work to be performed under this contract is on a project assisted under a program providing direct Federal financial assistance from the Department of Housing and Urban Development and is subject to the requirements of section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, as amended, 12 U.S.C. 1701u. Section 3 requires that to the greatest extent feasible opportunities for training and employment be given lower income residents of the project area and contracts for work in connection with the project to be awarded to business concerns which are located in, or owned in substantial part by persons residing in the area of the project.
- 2.) The parties to this contract will comply with the provisions of said Section 3 and the regulations issued pursuant thereto by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development set forth in 24 CFR Part 135, and all applicable rules and orders of the Department issued thereunder prior to the execution of this contract. The parties to this contract certify and agree that they are under no contractual or other disability which would prevent them from complying with these requirements.
- 3.) The contractor will send to each labor organization or representative of workers with which he has a collective bargain-agreement or other contract or understanding, if any, a notice advising the said labor organization or workers' representative of his commitments under this Section 3 clause and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment or training.
- 4.) The contractor will include this Section 3 clause in every subcontract for work in connection with the project and will, at the direction of the applicant for or recipient of Federal financial assistance, take appropriate action pursuant to the subcontract upon a finding that the subcontractor is in violation of regulations issued by the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development, 24 CFR Part 135. The contractor will not subcontract with any subcontractor where it has notice or knowledge that the letter has been found in violation of regulations under 24 CFR Part 135 and will not let any subcontract unless the subcontractor has first provided it with a preliminary statement of ability to comply with the requirements of these regulations.
- 5.) Compliance with the provisions of Section 3, the regulations set forth in the 24 CFR Part 135, and all applicable rules and orders of the Department issued thereunder prior to the execution of the contract, shall be a condition of the Federal financial assistance provided to the project, binding upon the applicant or recipient for such assistance, its successors, and assigns. Failure to fulfill these requirements shall subject the applicant or recipient, its contractors and subcontractors, its successors, and assigns to those sanctions specified by the grant or loan agreement or contract through which Federal assistance is provided, and to such sanctions as are specified by 24 CFR Part 135.



## Sample "Provision for Remedies" Clause

*Note: It is required that any contract, regardless of value, contain a provision for remedies in case of violation or breach of terms, including sanctions. The following is a sample clause which meets the requirement. There is no specific required language and the recipient's attorney should approve whatever language is used.*

1.) **Termination:** Unearned payments under this contract may be suspended or terminated upon refusal to accept any additional conditions that may be imposed by City/County; or if the grant to the City/County under the Community Development Block Grant Program is suspended or terminated. Moreover, if through any cause, the contractor shall fail to fulfill its obligations under this contract in a timely and proper manner, or if the contractor shall violate any of the covenants, agreements, conditions or obligations of the contract documents; the City/County may terminate this contract by giving written notice to the contractor and surety of such termination and specifying the effective date of such termination. In such event, the City/County may take over the work and prosecute the same to completion, by contract or otherwise, and the contractor and his sureties shall be liable to the City/County for any additional cost incurred by the Owner in its completion of the work and they shall also be liable to the Owner for liquidated damages for any delay in the completion of the work as provided below. Furthermore, the Contractor will be paid an amount which bears the same ratio to the total compensation as the work and services actually performed bear to the total work and services required. Provided, however, that if less than sixty percent of the services required by this Contract have been performed upon the effective date of such termination, the Contractor shall be reimbursed (in addition to the above payment) for that portion of the actual out-of-pocket expenses (not otherwise reimbursed under this Contract) incurred by the Contractor during the Contract period which are directly attributable to the uncompleted portion of the services required by this Contract.

2.) **Liquidated Damages for Delays.** If the work is not completed within the time stipulated, therefore, including any extensions of time for excusable delays as herein provided, the Contractor shall pay to the Owner as fixed and agreed liquidated damages (it being impossible to determine the damages occasioned by the delay) for each working day of delay, until the work is completed, the amount as set forth in (insert location of liquidated damages statement, normally found in the Contract General Conditions) and the Contractor and his sureties shall be liable to the Owner for the amount thereof.

3.) **Excusable Delays.** The right of the Contractor to proceed shall not be terminated nor shall the Contractor be charged with liquidated damages for any delays in the completion of the work due:

- (a) To any acts of the Government, including controls or restrictions upon or requisitioning of materials, equipment, tools, or labor by reason of war, National Defense, or any other national emergency;
- (b) To any acts of the Owner;
- (c) To causes not reasonable foreseeable by the parties to this Contract at the time of the execution of the Contract which are beyond the control and without the fault or negligence of the



Contractor, including, but not restricted to, acts of God or of the public enemy, acts of another Contractor in the performance of some other contract with the Owner, fires, floods, epidemics, quarantine, strikes, freight embargoes, and weather of unusual severity such as hurricanes, tornadoes, and cyclones; and

(d) To any delay of any subcontractor occasioned by any of the causes specified in subparagraphs (a) (b) and (c) or this subparagraph "d".

Provided, however, that the Contractor promptly notified the Owner within ten (10) days of the cause of the delay. Upon receipt of such notification, the Owner shall ascertain the facts and the cause and extent of delay. If upon the basis of the terms of this contract the delay is properly excusable, the Owner shall extend the time for completing the work for a period of time commensurate with the period of excusable delay.

### **Sample "Termination for Convenience Clause"**

*Note: it is required that a "termination" clause be included in any contract over \$10,000 in value. This is a sample clause. The recipient's attorney should approve whatever language is used in the contract. There is no required language.*

#### **1.) Termination for Convenience of the (city or county):**

The (city or county) may terminate this contract at any time for any reason by giving at least thirty (30) days notice in writing to the contractor. If the contract is terminated by the (city or county) as provided herein, the contractor will be paid a fair payment as negotiated with the (city or county) for the work completed as of the date of termination.



## **Equal Employment Opportunity (EEO) Clause**

During the performance of this contract, the Contractor agrees as follows:

- 1.) The Contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex or national origin. The Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and the employees are treated during employment without regard to their race, color, religion, sex or national origin. Such action shall include, but not be limited to the following: Employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices to be provided setting forth the provisions of this nondiscrimination clause.
- 2.) The Contractor will, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the Contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, sex or national origin.
- 3.) The Contractor will send to each labor union or representative of workers with which he has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, a notice to be provided advising the said labor union or workers' representative of the Contractor's commitments under this section, and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment.
- 4.) The Contractor will comply with all provisions of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and of the rules, regulations and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor.
- 5.) The Contractor will furnish all information and reports required by Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and by rules, regulations and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or pursuant thereto, and will permit access to his books, records and accounts by the administering agency and the Secretary of Labor for purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations and orders.
- 6.) In the event of the Contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination clauses of this contract or with any of the said rules, regulations, or orders, this contract may be canceled, terminated or suspended in whole or in part and the contractor may be declared ineligible for further Government contracts or federally assisted construction contracts in accordance with procedures authorized in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and such other sanctions may be imposed and remedies invoked as provided in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, or by the rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, or as otherwise provided by law.
- 7.) The Contractor will include the portion of the sentence immediately preceding paragraph (1) and the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (7) in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor issued pursuant to Section 204



of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, so that such provisions will be binding upon each subcontractor or vendor. The Contractor will take such action with respect to any subcontract or purchase order as the administering agency may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions, including sanctions for noncompliance. Provided, however, that in the event a Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation with a subcontractor or vendor as a result of such direction by the administering agency the contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.



**STANDARD FEDERAL EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY CONSTRUCTION  
CONTRACT SPECIFICATIONS  
(EXECUTIVE ORDER 11246)**

1.) As used in these specifications:

a. "Covered area" means the geographical area described in the solicitation from which this contract resulted;

b. "Director" means Director, Office of Federal Contract Compliance Program, United States Department of Labor, or any person to whom the Director delegates authority;

c.. "Employer identification number" means the Federal Social Security Number used on the Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return, US. Treasury Department Form 941.

d. "Minority" includes:

(i) Black (all persons having origins in any of the Black African racial groups not of Hispanic origin);

(ii) Hispanic (all persons of Mexican, Puerto Rican, Cuban, Central or South American or other Spanish Culture or origin, regardless of race);

(iii) Asian and Pacific Islander (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia, the Indian Subcontinent, or the Pacific Islands); and

(iv) American Indian or Alaskan Native (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of North America and maintaining identifiable tribal affiliations through membership and participation or community identification).

2.) Whenever the Contractor, or any Subcontractor at any tier, subcontracts a portion of the work involving any construction trade, it shall physically include in each subcontract in excess of \$10,000 the provisions of these specifications and the Notice which contains the applicable goals for minority and female participation and which is set forth in the solicitations from which this contract resulted.

3.) If the Contractor is participating (pursuant to 41 CFR 60-4.5) in a Hometown Plan approved by the US. Department of Labor in the covered area either individually or through an association, its affirmative action obligations on all work in the Plan area (including goals and timetables) shall be in accordance with that Plan for those trade which have unions participating in the Plan. Contractors must be able to demonstrate their participation in and compliance with the provisions of any such Hometown Plan. Each Contractor or Subcontractor participating in an approved Plan is individually required to comply with its obligations under the EEO clause, and to make a good faith effort to achieve each goal under the Plan in each trade in which it has employees. The overall good faith performance by other Contractors or Subcontractors toward a goal in an



approved Plan does not excuse any covered Contractor's or Subcontractor's failure to take good faith efforts to achieve the Plan goals and timetables.

4.) The Contractor shall implement the specific affirmative action standards provided in paragraphs 7a through p of these specifications. The goals set forth in the solicitation from which this contract resulted are expressed as percentages of the total hours of employment and training of minority and female utilization the Contractor should reasonably be able to achieve in each construction trade in which it has employees in the covered area. The Contractor is expected to make substantially uniform progress toward its goals in each craft during the period specified.

5.) Neither the provisions of any collective bargaining agreement, nor the failure by a union with whom the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement, to refer either minorities or women shall excuse the Contractor's obligations under these specifications. Executive Order 11246, or the regulations promulgated pursuant thereto.

6.) In order for the non-working training hours of apprentices and trainees to be counted in meeting the goals, such apprentices and trainees must be employed by the Contractor during the training period and the Contractor must have made a commitment to employ the apprentices and trainees at the completion of their training, subject to the availability of employment opportunities. Trainees must be trained pursuant to training programs approved by the U. S. Department of Labor.

7.) The Contractor shall take specific affirmative actions to ensure equal employment opportunity. The evaluation of the Contractor's compliance with these specifications shall be based upon its effort to achieve maximum results from its actions. The Contractor shall document these efforts fully, and shall implement affirmative action steps at least as extensive as the following:

a. Ensure and maintain a working environment free of harassment, intimidation and coercion at all sites, and in all facilities at which the Contractor's employees are assigned to work. The Contractor, where possible, will assign two or more women to each construction project. The Contractor shall specifically ensure that all foremen, superintendents and other on-site supervisory personnel are aware of and carry out the Contractor's obligation to maintain such a working environment, with specific attention to minority or female individuals working at such sites or in such facilities.

b. Establish and maintain a current list of minority and female recruitment sources, provide written notification to minority and female recruitment sources and to community organizations when the Contractor or its unions have employment opportunities available, and maintain a record of the organizations' responses.

c. Maintain a current file of the names, addresses and telephone numbers of each minority and female off-the street applicant and minority or female referral from a union, a recruitment source or community organization and of what action was taken with respect to each such individual. If



such individual was sent to the union hiring hall for referral and was not referred back to the Contractor by the union, or if referred, not employed by the Contractor, this shall be documented in the file with the reasons therefor, along with whatever additional actions the Contractor may have taken.

d. Provide immediate written notification to the Director when the union or unions with which the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement has not referred to the Contractor a minority person or woman sent by the Contractor, or when the Contractor has other information that the union referral process has impeded the Contractor's efforts to meet its obligations.

e. Develop on-the-job training opportunities and/or participate in training programs for the area which expressly include minorities and women, including upgrading programs and apprenticeship and trainee programs relevant to the Contractor's employment needs, especially those programs funded or approved by the Department of Labor. The Contractor shall provide notice of these programs to the sources compiled under 7b above.

f. Disseminate the contractor's EEO policy by providing notice of the policy to unions and training programs and requesting their cooperation in assisting the Contractor in meeting its EEO obligations; by including it in any policy manual and collective bargaining agreement; by publicizing it in the company newspaper, annual report, etc.; by specific review of the policy with all management personnel and with all minority and female employees at least once a year; and by posting the company EEO policy on bulletin boards accessible to all employees at each location where construction work is performed.

g. Review, at least annually, the company's EEO policy and affirmative action obligations under these specifications with all employees having any responsibility for hiring, assignment, lay-off, termination or other employment decisions including specific review of these items with on-site supervisory personnel such as Superintendents, General Foremen, etc., prior to the initiation of construction work at any job site. A written record shall be made and maintained identifying the time and place of these meetings, persons attending, subject matter discussed and disposition of the subject matter.

h. Disseminate the Contractor's EEO policy externally by including it in any advertising in the news media, specifically including minority and female news media, and providing written notification to and discussing the contractor's EEO policy with other contractors and Subcontractors with whom the Contractor does or anticipates doing business.

i. Directs its recruitment efforts, both oral and written, to minority, female and community organizations, to schools with minority and female students and to minority and female recruitment and training organizations serving the Contractor's recruitment area and employment needs. Not later than one month prior to the date for the acceptance of applications for apprenticeship or other training by any recruitment source. The Contractor shall send written notification to organizations such as the above, describing the openings, screening procedures, and tests to be used in the selection process.



j. Encourage present minority and female employees to recruit other minority persons and women and, where reasonable, provide after school, summer and vacation employment of minority and female youth both on the site and in other areas of a Contractor's workforce.

k. Validate all tests and other selection requirements where there is an obligation to do so under 41 CFR Part 60-3.

l. Conduct, at least annually, an inventory and evaluation at least of all minority and female personnel for promotional opportunities and encourage these employees to seek or to prepare for, through appropriate training, etc., such opportunities.

m. Ensure that seniority practices, job classifications, work assignments and other personnel practices, do not have a discriminatory effect by continually monitoring all personnel and employment related activities to ensure that the EEO policy and the Contractor's obligations under these specifications are being carried out.

n. Ensure that all facilities and company activities are nonsegregated except that separate or single-user toilet and necessary changing facilities shall be provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

o. Document and maintain a record of all solicitations of offers for subcontracts from minority and female construction contractors and suppliers, including circulation of solicitations to minority and female contractor associations and other business associations.

p. Conduct a review, at least annually, of all supervisors' adherence to and performance under the Contractor's EEO policies and affirmative action obligations.

8.) Contractors are encouraged to participate in voluntary associations which assist in fulfilling one or more of their affirmative action obligations (7a through p). The efforts of a contractor association, joint contractor-union, contractor-community, or other similar group of which the contractor is a member and participant may be asserted as fulfilling any one or more of its obligations under 7a through p of those Specifications provided that the Contractor actively participates in the group, makes every effort to assure that the group has a positive impact on the employment of minorities and women in the industry, ensures that the concrete benefits of the program are reflected in the Contractor's minority and female workforce participation, makes a good faith effort to meet its individual goals and timetables, and can provide access to documentation which demonstrates the effectiveness of actions taken on behalf of the Contractor. The obligation to comply, however, is the Contractor's and failure of such a group to fulfill an obligation shall not be a defense for the Contractor's noncompliance.

9.) A single goal for minorities and a separate single goal for women have been established. The Contractor, however, is required to provide equal employment opportunity and to take affirmative action for all minority groups, both male and female, and all women, both minority and non-minority. Consequently, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a particular group is employed in a substantially disparate manner (for example, even though the



Contractor has achieved its goals for women generally, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a specific minority group of women is underutilized).

10.) The Contractor shall not use the goals and timetables or affirmative action standards to discriminate against any person because of race color, religion, sex or national origin.

11.) The Contractor shall not enter into any Subcontract with any person or firm debarred from Government contracts pursuant to Executive Order 11246.

12.) The Contractor shall carry out such sanctions and penalties for violation of these specifications and of the Equal Opportunity Clause, including suspension, termination and cancellation of existing subcontracts as may be imposed or ordered pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and its implementing regulations, by the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs. Any Contractor who fails to carry out such sanctions and penalties shall be in violation of these specifications and Executive Order 11246, as amended.

13.) The Contractor, in fulfilling its obligations under these specifications, shall implement specific affirmative action steps, at least as extensive as those standards prescribed in paragraph 7 of these specifications, so as to achieve maximum results from its efforts to ensure equal employment opportunity. If the Contractor fails to comply with the requirements of the Executive Order, the implementing regulations, or these specifications, the Director shall proceed in accordance with 41 CFR 60-4.S.

14.) The Contractor shall designate a responsible official to monitor all employment related activity to ensure that the company EEO policy is being carried out, to submit reports relating to the provisions hereof as may be required by the Government and to keep records. Records shall at least include for each employee the name, address, telephone numbers, construction trade, union affiliation if any, employee identification number when assigned, social security number, race, sex, status (e.g., mechanic, apprentice, trainee, helper or laborer), dates of changes in status, hours worked per week in the indicated trade, rate of pay, and locations at which the work was performed. Records shall be maintained in an easily understandable and retrievable form; however, to the degree that existing records satisfy this requirement, contractors shall not be required to maintain separate records.

15.) Nothing herein provided shall be construed as a limitation upon the application of other laws which establish different standards of compliance or upon the application of requirements for the hiring of local or other area residents (e.g., those under the Public Works Employment Act of 1977 and the Community Development Block Grant Program).



**NOTICE OF REQUIREMENT FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO EQUAL  
EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY (EXECUTIVE ORDER 11246)**

1.) The Offerer's or Bidder's attention is called to the "Equal Opportunity Clause" and the "Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications" set forth herein.

2.) The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, are as follows:

<u>Timetable:</u>	<u>Goals for minority participation</u>	<u>Goals for female participation</u>
Until Further Notice	(insert goal) *	6.9%

These goals are applicable to each non-exempt contractor's total on-site construction workforce, regardless of whether or not part of that workforce is performing work on a Federal, Federally assisted or non-Federally related project, contract or sub-contract.

The contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4 shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in 41 CFR 60-4.3(a), and its efforts to meet the goals established for the geographical area where the contract resulting from this solicitation is to be performed. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade, and the contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

3.) The Contractor shall provide written notification to the Director of the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs within 10 working days of award of any construction subcontract in excess of \$10,000 at any tier for construction work under the contract resulting from this solicitation. The notification shall list the name, address and telephone number of the subcontractor; employer identification number; estimated dollar amount of the subcontract; estimated starting and completion dates of the subcontract; and the geographical area in which the contract is to be performed.

4.) As used in this Notice, and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is *(insert description of the economic area in which the contract will be performed, giving the city, SMSA or non SMSA designation, and a list of the counties included in the economic area).*

\*Note: See the following Federal Register, Vol. 44, No. 175, dated 9-7-79, for appropriate goals arranged by economic area. The goal for female participation is 6.9% statewide.



**Federal Register, Vol. 44, No 175 (8/7/79)**  
**E.O. 11246: Goals for Minority Participation in the Construction Industry**

<b>Augusta, Georgia SMSA</b>			<b>Columbus, Georgia SMSA</b>		
<u>SMSA Counties</u>		27.2%	<u>SMSA Counties</u>		29.5%
Columbia			Chattahoochee		
Richmond			Columbus/Muscogee		31.8%
<u>Non-SMSA Counties</u>		32.8%	<u>Non-SMSA Counties</u>		
Burke			Harris		
Emanuel			Marion		
Glascock			Meriwether		
Jefferson			Quitman		
Jenkins			Schley		
Lincoln			Stewart		
McDuffie			Sumter		
Taliaferro			Talbot		
Warren			Troup		
Wilkes			Webster		
<b>Atlanta, Georgia SMSA</b>			<b>Macon, Georgia SMSA</b>		
<u>SMSA Counties</u>		21.2%	<u>SMSA Counties</u>		27.5%
Butts			Bibb		
Cherokee			Houston		
Clayton			Jones		
Cobb			Twiggs		
Dekalb			<u>Non-SMSA Counties</u>		31.7%
Douglas			Baldwin		
Fayette			Bleckley		
Forsyth			Crawford		
Fulton			Crisp		
Gwinette			Dodge		
Henry			Dooley		
Newton			Hancock		
Paulding			Johnson		
Rockdale			Laurens		
Walton			Macon		
<u>Non-SMSA Counties</u>		19.5%	Monroe		
Banks			Peach		
Barrow			Pulaski		
Bartow			Putnam		
Carroll			Taylor		
Clarke			Telfair		
Coweta			Treutlin		
Dawson			Washington		
Elbert			Wheeler		
Fannin			Wilcox		
Floyd			Wilkinson		
Franklin					
Gilmer					
Gordon			<b>Savannah, Georgia SMSA</b>		30.6%
Greene			<u>SMSA Counties</u>		
Habersham			Bryan		
Hall			Chatham		
Haralson			Effingham		
Hart			<u>Non-SMSA Counties</u>		29.8%
Heard			Appling		
Jackson			Atkinson		
Jasper			Bacon		
Lamar			Bulloch		
Lumpkin			Candler		
Madison			Coffee		
Morgan			Evans		
Oconee			Jeff Davis		
Oglethorpe			Liberty		
Pickens			Long		
Pike			McIntosh		
Polk			Montgomery		
Rabun			Screven		
Stephens			Toombs		
Towns			Wayne		
Union					
Upton					
White					



**Albany Georgia SMSA**SMSA Counties 32.1%

Dougherty

Lee

Non-SMSA Counties 31.1%

Baker

Ben Hill

Berrien

Brooks

Calhoun

Clay

Clinch

Colquitt

Cook

Decatur

Early

Echols

Grady

Irwin

Lanier

Lowndes

Miller

Mitchell

Randolph

Seminole

Terrell

Thomas

Tift

Turner

Worth

**Jacksonville, Florida SMSA**Non-SMSA Counties 22.2%

Brantley

Camden

Charlton

Glynn

Pierce

Ware

**Chattanooga, Tennessee SMSA**SMSA Counties 12.5%

Catoosa

Dade

Walker

Non-SMSA Counties 8.5%

Chattoga

Murray

Whitfield



## **Certification of Nonsegregated Facilities**

By the submission of this bid, the bidder, offerer, applicant or subcontractor certifies that s/he does not maintain or provide for his/her employees any segregated facility at any of his/her establishments, and that s/he does not permit employees to perform their services at any location, under his/her control, where segregated facilities are maintained. S/He certifies further that s/he will not maintain or provide for employees any segregated facilities at any of his/her establishments, and s/he will not permit employees to perform their services at any location under his/her control where segregated facilities are maintained. The bidder, offerer, applicant or subcontractor agrees that a breach of this certification is a violation of the Equal Opportunity Clause of this contract. As used in this certification, the term "segregated facilities" means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms, and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation and housing facilities provided for employees which are segregated by explicit directive or are in fact segregated on the basis of race, color, religion, or national origin, because of habit, local custom, or otherwise. S/He further agrees that (except where s/he has obtained identical certifications from proposed subcontractors for specific time periods) s/he will obtain identical certification from proposed subcontractors prior to the award of subcontracts exceeding \$10,000 which are not exempt from the provisions of the Equal Opportunity Clause; that s/he will retain such certifications in his/her files; and that s/he will forward the following notice to such proposed subcontractors (except where proposed subcontractors have submitted identical certifications for specific time periods).



## **FEDERAL LABOR STANDARDS PROVISION Georgia Community Development Block Grant**

### **Applicability**

The Project or Program to which the construction work covered by this contract pertains is being assisted by the United States of America and the following Federal Labor Standards Provisions are included in this Contract pursuant to the provisions applicable to such Federal assistance.

**A.1.(i) Minimum Wages.** All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 or under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR Part 3), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalents thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the contractor and such laborers and mechanics. Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under Section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: Provided, that the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(1)(ii)) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can be easily seen by the workers.

(ii)(a) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:

(1) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination; and

(2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.

(b) If the contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and HUD or its designee agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the



action taken shall be sent by HUD or its designee to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, Employment Standards Administration, US. Department of Labor, Washington, D.C. 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise HUD or its designee or will notify HUD or its designee within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(c) In the event the contractor, the laborers or mechanics to be employed in the classification or their representatives, and HUD or its designee do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), HUD or its designee shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of HUD or its designee, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise HUD or its designee or will notify HUD or its designee within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(d) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to subparagraphs (1)(b) or (c) of this paragraph, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(iii) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.

(iv) If the contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, provided, that the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program. (Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under OMB Control Number 1215-0140.)

**2. Withholding.** HUD or its designee shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld from the contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other Federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees and helpers, employed by the contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee or helper, employed or working on the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937 for under the Housing Act of 1949 in the construction or development of the project), all or part of the wages required by the contract, HUD or its designee may, after



written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased. HUD or its designee may, after written notice to the contractor, disburse such amounts withheld for and on account of the contractor or subcontractor to the respective employees to whom they are due. The Comptroller General shall make such disbursements in the case of direct Davis-Bacon Act contracts.

3. (i) **Payrolls and basic records.** Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the contractor during the course of the work preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work (or under the United States Housing Act of 1937, or under the Housing Act of 1949, in the construction or development of the project.) Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker, his or her correct classification, hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types described in Section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act), daily and weekly number of hours worked, deductions made and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in Section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the contractor shall maintain records which show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual cost incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable program (Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under OMB Control Numbers 1215-0140 and 1215-0017.)

(ii)(a) The contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to HUD or its designee if the agency is a party to the contract, but if the agency is not such a party, the contractor will submit the payrolls to the applicant, sponsor, or owner, as the case may be, for transmission to HUD or its designee. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(3)(i). This information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH-347 is available for this purpose and may be purchased from the Superintendent of Documents (Federal Stock Number 029-005-00014-1), US. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, 20402. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. (Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under OMB Control Number 1215-0149.)

(b) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:



(1) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR Part 5.5(a)(3)(i) and that such information is correct and complete;

(2) That each laborer or mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in 29 CFR Part 3;

(c) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph A.3(ii)(b) of this section.

(d) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under Section 1001 of Title 18 and Section 231 of Title 31 of the United States Code.

(iii) The contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph A.3(i) of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of HUD or its designee or the Department of Labor, and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, HUD or its designee may, after written notice to the contractor, sponsor, applicant, or owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR Part 5.12.

**4.(i) Apprentices and Trainees.** Apprentices. Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the US. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ration permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeymen's hourly rate) specified in the contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed.



Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits, apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification.

If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination. In the event the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Bureau, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(ii) **Trainees.** Except as provided in 29 CFR 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the US. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journey hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination which provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate who is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performs. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ration permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(iii) **Equal employment opportunity.** The utilization of apprentices, trainees and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR Part 30.

**5. Compliance with Copeland Act requirements.** The contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 3 which are incorporated by reference in this contract.



6. **Subcontracts.** The contractor or subcontractor will insert in any subcontracts the clauses contained in 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1) through (10) and such other clauses as HUD or its designee may be appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR Part 5.5.
7. **Contract termination: debarment.** A breach of the contract clauses in 29 CFR 5.5 may be grounded for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR 5.12.
8. **Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act Requirements.** All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR Parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.
9. **Disputes concerning labor standards.** Disputes arising out of a labor standards provision of this contract shall to be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR Parts 5, 6 and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and HUD or its designee, the US. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.
10. (i) **Certification of Eligibility.** By entering into this contract, the contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of Section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1) or to be awarded HUD contracts or participate in HUD programs pursuant to 24 CFR Part 24.
- (ii) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of Section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR 5.12(a)(1) or to be awarded HUD contracts or participate in HUD programs pursuant to 24 CFR Part 24.
- (iii) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the US. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001. Additionally, US. Criminal Code, Section 1010, Title 18, U.S.C., "Federal Housing Administration transactions", provides in part: "Whoever, for the purpose of ...influencing in any way the action of such Administration...makes, utters or publishes any statement, knowing the same to be false...shall be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned not more than two years, or both."
11. **Complaints, Proceedings, or Testimony by Employees.** No laborer or mechanic to whom the wage, salary, or other labor standards provisions of this Contract are applicable shall be discharged or in any other manner discriminated against by the Contractor or any subcontractor because such employee has filed any complaint or instituted or caused to be instituted any proceeding or has testified or is about to testify in any proceeding under or relating to the labor standards applicable under this Contract to his employer.



**B. Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.** As used in this paragraph, the terms "laborers" and "mechanics" include watchmen and guards.

(1) **Overtime requirements:** No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

(2) **Violation:** liability for unpaid wages, liquidated damages. In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, the contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefore shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph, in the sum of \$10 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in subparagraph (1) of this paragraph.

(3) **Withholding for unpaid wages and liquidated damages:** HUD or its designee shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any money payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in subparagraph (2) of this paragraph.

(4) **Subcontracts:** The contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in subparagraph (1) through (4) of this paragraph and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in subparagraphs (1) through (4) of this paragraph.

### **C. Health and Safety**

(1) No laborer or mechanic shall be required to work in surroundings or under working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to his health and safety as determined under construction safety and health standards promulgated by the Secretary of Labor by regulation.

(2) The Contractor shall comply with all regulations issued by the Secretary of Labor pursuant to Title 29 Part 1926 (formerly part 1518) and failure to comply may result in imposition of



sanctions pursuant to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act (Public Law 91-54, 83 Stat. 96).

(3) The Contractor shall include the provisions of this Article in every subcontract so that such provisions will be binding on each subcontractor. The Contractor shall take such action with respect to any subcontract as the Secretary of Housing and Urban Development or the Secretary of Labor shall direct as a means of enforcing such provisions.



**ACCEPTABLE ALTERNATE WORK SHEET FOR CONTRACTOR CERTIFICATION  
REGARDING DEBARMENT, SUSPENSION, INELIGIBILITY AND VOLUNTARY EXCLUSION  
(LOWER-TIER PARTICIPANT) FOR HUD PROGRAMS**

Certification regarding Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion-Lower-Tier Covered Transactions pursuant to 24 Code of Federal Regulations, Part 24.510(b).

1. By signing and submitting this proposal, the prospective lower-tier participant certifies that neither it, its principals nor affiliates, is presently debarred, suspended, proposed for debarment, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this transaction by any Federal department or agency. Further, the Participant provides the certification set out below.
2. The certification in this clause is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was entered into. If it is later determined that an erroneous certification was rendered, in addition to other remedies available to the Federal Government, the Department or agency with which this transaction originated may pursue available remedies.
3. Further, the Participant shall provide immediate written notice to the person to which this proposal is submitted if at any time the Participant learns that this certification was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.
4. By submitting this proposal, it is agreed that should the proposed covered transaction be entered into, the Participant will not knowingly enter into any lower-tier covered transaction with a person who is debarred, suspended, declared ineligible, or voluntarily excluded from participation in this covered transaction unless authorized by the agency with which this transaction originated.
5. It is further agreed that by submitting this proposal, the Participant will include this Certification, without modification, in all lower-tier covered transactions and in all solicitations for lower-tier covered transactions.

Contractor Name \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_ Address \_\_\_\_\_

City \_\_\_\_\_ State \_\_\_\_\_ Zip \_\_\_\_\_

**NON-CERTIFICATION:**

As the perspective lower-tier participant, I am unable to certify to statements in this Certification as explained in the attachment to this proposal.

Contractor Name \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Title \_\_\_\_\_ Address \_\_\_\_\_

City \_\_\_\_\_ State \_\_\_\_\_ Zip \_\_\_\_\_

*The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 U.S.C. 1001.*



## **COMPLIANCE WITH CLEAN AIR AND WATER ACTS**

The contract is subject to the requirements of the Clean Air Act, as amended, 42 USC 1857 et. seq., and the regulations of the Environmental Protection Agency with respect thereto, at 40 CFR Part 15, as amended from time to time.

In compliance with said regulations:

- 1.) The Contractor shall require of subcontractors that any facility to be utilized in the performance of any nonexempt contract or subcontract is not listed on the List of Violating Facilities issued by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) pursuant to 4C CFR 15.20.
- 2.) The Contractor will comply with all the requirements of Section 114 of the Clean Air Act, as amended, (42 USC 1857c-8) and section 308 of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended, (330 USC 1318) relating to inspection, monitoring, entry, reports, and information, as well as all other requirements specified in said section 114 and section 308, and all regulations and guidelines issued thereunder.
- 3.) The Contractor will provide prompt notice of any notification received from the Director, Office of Federal Activities, EPA, indicating that a facility utilized or to be utilized for the contract is under consideration to be listed on the EPA List of Violating Facilities.
- 4.) The Contract will include or cause to be included the criteria and requirements to paragraph (1) through (4) of this section in every nonexempt subcontract and take such action as the Government will direct as a means of enforcing such provisions.



## **PERFORMANCE, PAYMENT and BID BONDS**

Contract Performance and Payment Bonds issued in the full amount of the contract are required by federal procurement rules if the contract is for \$100,000 or more.

A Bid Bond or other security is required by federal rules whenever the contract is for \$100,000 or more.

Generally these bonds must be issued by a surety company satisfactory to the local government, qualified to do business in Georgia, and in a format meeting the federal and state legal requirements. The bonding company must also appear on the "List of Acceptable Sureties" published annually by the US Department of the Treasury.

DCA recommends that CDBG Recipients be sure to assign responsibility for reviewing construction bonds. This job may be given to the local attorney, the grant administrator, or the project architect/engineer. Specific duties include verification that the agent is licensed by the state and authorized by the bonding company and verification through the Insurance Commissioner that the company is financially sound and licensed in Georgia. The actual bond should also be reviewed and verified as being valid.



**Contractor Affidavit and Agreement (Example):**

**CONTRACTOR AFFIDAVIT AND AGREEMENT**

By executing this affidavit, the undersigned contractor verifies its compliance with O.C.G.A. 13-10-91, stating affirmatively that the individual, firm, or corporation which is contracting with (name of public employer) has registered with and is participating in a federal work authorization program\* [any of the electronic verification of work authorization programs operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security or any equivalent federal work authorization program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security to verify information of newly hired employees, pursuant to the Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986 (IRCA), P.L. 99-603], in accordance with the applicability provisions and deadlines established in O.C.G.A. 13-10-91.

The undersigned further agrees that, should it employ or contract with any subcontractor(s) in connection with the physical performance of services pursuant to this contract with (name of public employer), contractor will secure from such subcontractor(s) similar verification of compliance with O.C.G.A. 13-10-91 on the Subcontractor Affidavit provided in Rule 300-10-01-.08 or a substantially similar form. Contractor further agrees to maintain records of such compliance and provide a copy of each such verification to the (name of the public employer) at the time the subcontractor(s) is retained to perform such service.

\_\_\_\_\_  
EEV / Basic Pilot Program\* User Identification Number

\_\_\_\_\_  
BY: Authorized Officer or Agent  
(Contractor Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title of Authorized Officer or Agent of Contractor

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name of Authorized Officer or Agent

SUBSCRIBED AND SWORN

BEFORE ME ON THIS THE

\_\_\_\_ DAY OF \_\_\_\_\_, 200\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My Commission Expires:

\_\_\_\_\_

\* As of the effective date of O.C.G.A. 13-10-91, the applicable federal work authorization program is the "EEV / Basic Pilot Program" operated by the U. S. Citizenship and Immigration Services Bureau of the U.S. Department of Homeland Security, in conjunction with the Social Security Administration (SSA).

**(End of Form)**



**Subcontractor Affidavit (Example):**

**SUBCONTRACTOR AFFIDAVIT**

By executing this affidavit, the undersigned subcontractor verifies its compliance with O.C.G.A. 13-10-91, stating affirmatively that the individual, firm or corporation which is engaged in the physical performance of services under a contract with (name of contractor) on behalf of (name of public employer) has registered with and is participating in a federal work authorization program\* [any of the electronic verification of work authorization programs operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security or any equivalent federal work authorization program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security to verify information of newly hired employees, pursuant to the Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986 (IRCA), P.L. 99-603], in accordance with the applicability provisions and deadlines established in O.C.G.A. 13-10-91.

\_\_\_\_\_  
EEV / Basic Pilot Program\* User Identification Number

\_\_\_\_\_  
BY: Authorized Officer or Agent  
(Subcontractor Name)

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

\_\_\_\_\_  
Title of Authorized Officer or Agent of Subcontractor

\_\_\_\_\_  
Printed Name of Authorized Officer or Agent

**SUBSCRIBED AND SWORN**

**BEFORE ME ON THIS THE**

\_\_\_\_ DAY OF \_\_\_\_\_, 200\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
Notary Public

My Commission Expires:  
\_\_\_\_\_

\* As of the effective date of O.C.G.A. 13-10-91, the applicable federal work authorization program is the "EEV / Basic Pilot Program" operated by the U. S. Citizenship and Immigration Services Bureau of the U.S. Department of Homeland Security, in conjunction with the Social Security Administration (SSA).

**(End of Form)**



**Item: X**  
**Programmatic Agreement**  
**for Section 106**  
**(Historic Preservation Compliance)**







**PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT  
AMONG THE GEORGIA DEPARTMENT OF COMMUNITY AFFAIRS,  
THE GEORGIA STATE HISTORIC PRESERVATION OFFICE  
AND THE ADVISORY COUNCIL ON HISTORIC PRESERVATION  
FOR THE ADMINISTRATION OF THE STATE OF GEORGIA "SMALL  
CITIES" COMMUNITY DEVELOPMENT BLOCK GRANT AND HOME  
INVESTMENT PARTNERSHIP PROGRAMS**

**WHEREAS**, the federal government has created and funded the Small Cities Community Development Block Grant (hereinafter "CDBG") and HOME Investment Partnership (hereinafter "HOME") programs in order to stimulate the revitalization of blighted low income neighborhoods and the repair, rehabilitation, and construction of affordable housing targeted to low income individuals and families; and

**WHEREAS**, the Georgia Department of Community Affairs (hereinafter "DCA") administers the CDBG program on behalf of general local governments with funds allocated by the Department of Housing and Urban Development (hereinafter "HUD"); and

**WHEREAS**, the Georgia Department of Community Affairs (hereinafter "DCA") administers the HOME program on behalf of general local governments and other eligible recipients with funds allocated by HUD; and

**WHEREAS**, by virtue of the age and significance of many low income neighborhoods, districts, and housing units eligible for CDBG or HOME funds in Georgia, the implementation of the CDBG and HOME programs by DCA may have an effect upon properties included in or eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places (hereinafter "National Register") pursuant to Section 800.13 of the regulations, 36 CFR Part 800, implementing Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, 16 U.S.C. 470f (hereinafter Section 106"); and

**WHEREAS**, Pursuant to 24 CFR Part 58, HUD has delegated the responsibility for compliance with the requirements of NEPA and Section 106 to DCA; and

**WHEREAS**, Pursuant to 24 CFR Part 58, DCA delegates its responsibility for compliance with NEPA and Section 106 to general local governments (hereinafter "State Recipients") which receive program funding from DCA and which enter into agreements with DCA for the administration of these programs; and

**WHEREAS**, in response to the principles set forth in the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation's (hereinafter "Council") Policy Statement on Affordable Housing and Historic Preservation (hereinafter "Policy Statement"), DCA, the Georgia State Historic Preservation Office (hereinafter "SHPO") and the Council have determined that DCA and its State Recipients can more effectively carry out their Section 106 review responsibilities for CDBG and HOME program activities if a programmatic agreement is used to streamline the administrative process, identify CDBG and HOME activities which can be exempted from Section 106 review because they have No Effect on historic properties, and permit greater flexibility when addressing historic properties which have special physical (e.g. lead paint, asbestos) or financial feasibility problems; and



**WHEREAS**, measures taken under this Agreement, while satisfying the requirements of Section 106 for purposes of the programs covered herein, do not automatically meet the requirements set forth in *The Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation and Guidelines for Rehabilitating Historic Buildings* (hereinafter "the Standards") for purposes of the Federal or State Rehabilitation Tax Incentive Programs or other programs not specifically included in this Agreement; and

**WHEREAS**, for purposes of this Agreement, "Afford Housing" is defined as housing which is either occupied or intended for occupation by owners or renters who are low income and who earn less than 80% of the applicable Median Income with adjustments for family size;

**NOW, THEREFORE**, DCA, SHPO, and the Council agree to enter into a Programmatic Agreement (hereinafter "Agreement") which shall direct the administration of the CDBG and HOME programs primarily for low and moderate-income housing in accordance with the following stipulations in order to take into account the potential effect on historic properties and to satisfy DCA's Section 106 responsibilities for all such individual undertakings of the CDBG and HOME programs:

#### STIPULATIONS

DCA will ensure that the following measures are carried out:

##### I. ADMINISTRATION OF THE PROGRAMMATIC AGREEMENT

- A. DCA shall ensure that State Recipients employ or contract with qualified professionals (hereinafter "Preservation Professional") who meet the *Secretary of Interior's Professional Qualifications Standards* at 36 CFR 61 (hereinafter "Professional Qualification"). The Preservation Professionals will carry out reviews related to their profession that are required under the terms of this Agreement, and DCA shall ensure that such Professionals follow the requirements established in this Agreement;
- B. State Recipients will notify DCA and the SHPO in writing once their Preservation Professional has been selected, but prior to initiation of the undertaking. The notification shall include the curriculum vitae of the Preservation Professionals qualifications and the address, phone and fax numbers of the State Recipient's primary points of contact for project activities pursuant to this Agreement;
- C. In order to assist DCA and State Recipients in ensuring that State Recipients employ or contract with qualified Preservation Professionals, and that such professionals follow the requirements established in this Agreement, the SHPO will compile a "List of Qualified Preservation Professionals" (hereinafter "List") who meet the Professional Qualifications. This List will also be compiled using information generated through application of the Recommended Qualifications for



Historic Preservationist (hereinafters "Recommended Qualification")  
outlined in Appendix A;

- D. The SHPO will make this List available to State Recipients and other interested parties. In order to assist Preservation Professionals being placed on the List, the SHPO will provide a standard form which will be made available to State Recipients. State Recipients who select a name from the list will be required to only notify DCA and the SHPO of their selection, and no curriculum vitae will need to be submitted. This List will be made available for technical assistance and its use is not required. This List does not constitute an endorsement by DCA or the SHPO of any Preservation Professionals, and may not be exhaustive of all qualified Preservation Professionals;
- E. Should DCA or the State Recipient determine that a State Recipient cannot employ or contract with qualified professionals to carry out reviews pursuant to this Agreement, DCA or the State Recipient shall consult with the SHPO to determine whether alternative arrangements can be made to allow the State Recipient or DCA to complete the review required pursuant to this Agreement. DCA shall notify the Council in writing of any alternative administrative procedures approved by the SHPO. If alternative arrangements cannot be made that meet the intent and terms of this Agreement, the State Recipient shall complete the Section 106 compliance process in accordance with 36 CFR Parts 800.4 through 800.6.
- F. DCA, in consultation with the SHPO and Council, shall plan, develop, and provide technical assistance on an ongoing basis to State Recipients and Preservation Professionals in order to ensure responsible adherence to the terms of this Agreement, including but not limited to: 1) an annual workshop targeted at both program administrators and Preservation Professionals as a prerequisite for program participation by State Recipients, and 2) the development of standardized approaches to the rehabilitation of historic housing for low-to-moderate-income families in cooperation with Georgia entitlement communities and other interested parties;

## EXEMPT ACTIVITIES

No review of properties is required if program activities are limited solely to those listed because these activities have a limited potential to affect historic properties;

- A. Properties less than fifty (50) years old;
- B. Rehabilitation (except reconstruction) of previously identified non-contributing building within a SHPO- approved surveyed historic district;



- Incentive
- C. Rehabilitation work to historic properties which is being or has been reviewed by the SHPO for the Federal or State Rehabilitation Programs;
  - D. Community Development activities limited solely to the following:
    - 1) General Community Development Activities which will not involve the alteration of potentially historic properties including;
    - 2) Grants or loans to participants in any Economic Development program funded by CDBG which may be used for working capital, equipment, furniture, fixtures, and debt refinancing, or acquisition of non-historic building for reuse. Such activities shall require SHPO review only if such activities should involve changes to structures which are either listed in or are considered eligible for inclusion in the National Register;
    - 3) Upgrading of existing curbs, sidewalks, streets, utilities, parks, or other public facilities or infrastructure, except where significant historic materials retain their integrity from the historic period and exhibit distinctive materials, methods of construction, or elements of design that would contribute to the character of a National Register-listed or eligible historic district or property;
    - 4) Projects consisting of grants or loans to eligible families or entities to be applied solely to the purchase of residences or businesses;
    - 5) Acquisition of property which is limited to the legal transfer of title with no physical improvements or changes proposed;
    - 6) Demolition of dilapidated secondary structures (garages, sheds, etc.)
    - 7) Rehabilitation of housing units fifty (50) years of age or older which were originally configured as One and Two-family units including:
      - a) All interior improvements and/or changes in floor plans that do not affect or change the appearance of the exterior, when the planned activities involve only interior spaces and other exempt activities, and a reasonable effort is made to conduct all interior and exterior alterations in accordance with guidance provided at Appendix B – (Historic Rehabilitation Guidelines;)
      - b) Repair, replacement, or installation of the following systems provided that such work does not affect or change the exterior appearance of street facing elevations of the property and has only minor affect on all other elevations:
        - \* Electrical supply, switch/outlets, and fixtures;
        - \* Plumbing supply, drainage, and fixtures;



- \* HVAC systems;
- \* Smoke, CO, alarms, security lighting or other safety devices;
- \* Electrical or mechanical ventilation systems;
- \* Kitchens, bathrooms, and utility room repairs and/or improvements.
- c) Repainting of exterior surfaces provided that destructive surface preparation treatments, including sandblasting, are not used;
- d) Weatherization or energy conservation activities which do not significantly affect the exterior appearance, especially the front elevation, including:
  - \* Attic, floor and wall insulation;
  - \* Caulking, weather-stripping, and other air infiltration control measures;
  - \* Storm windows or doors, and wooden screen doors which do not harm or obscure historic windows or trim;
  - \* Repair and weather-stripping of windows and doors in a manner which does not harm or obscure historic windows or trim;
  - \* Underpinning and ventilation of crawlspaces except that underpinning of the front façade shall be accomplished by setting the underpinning material at least 2 inches behind the outer face of piers;
- e) Lead-based Paint Abatement or “Management in Place” activities carried out in accordance with *Preservation Brief #37: Appropriate Methods for Reducing Lead-Paint Hazards in Historic Housing*;
- f) Alterations necessary to comply with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) or to improve handicap accessibility for current or anticipated residents of properties which are carried out in accordance with *Preservation Brief #32: Making Historic Properties Accessible*;
- g) Asbestos siding or roofing materials may be either removed and replaced or encapsulated with new roofing or siding materials



which are compatible, though not necessarily similar, with the basic scale and historic character of the district;

- h) Repairs to or replacement of deteriorated roof materials with either similar materials or with new materials which provide a sense of compatibility with other properties in the district (e.g. metal roofing or architectural shingles may be preferable if financially feasible);
- i) Repair or re-framing of structural roof elements as required to improve the drainage and durability of the roof as long as the appearance of the roof lines visible from the front elevation are not affected;
- j) Repair, replacement, or installation of gutters and down spouts;
- k) Installation of door and/or window locks and/or electronic security apparatus;
- l) Repair or re-pointing of chimneys, brick or other masonry features which are elements of the front elevation with design, materials and pointing to match original and, in cases of severe deterioration, elimination of chimneys above the roof line. When repairs are made, the work shall follow the recommended approaches in *Preservation Brief #2: Re-pointing Mortar Joints in Historic Brick Buildings*;
- m) Removal of "floating" chimneys which lack full ground contact with non-combustible materials;
- n) Repair of foundations and structural elements in a manner that is reasonably compatible with the scale and historic character of the district. Underpinning and ventilation of crawlspaces is permitted and, whenever original brick piers remain in place, shall be accomplished by setting the underpinning material at least 2 inches behind the outer face of piers;
- o) Repair of front porches, ceilings, awnings, floors, rails, columns, cornices and other trim details with new materials used to match the original materials;
- p) Repair of windows, doors, and siding with new materials which match the original in design, color, texture, and material composition;

### **III. IDENTIFICATION OF HISTORIC PROPERTIES**



If the State Recipient determines that the planned activities are not exempt activities as listed in Stipulation II, then the following steps shall be taken within 30 days:

- A. For each target area or for each program activity, the Preservation Professional shall identify if the subject property or other properties within the area of potential effects are fifty (50) years old or older and evaluate each for eligibility in the National Register of Historic Places. In making this determination, the Preservation Professional shall consult previous surveys of historic properties and/or districts, if any;
- B. At a minimum, the Preservation Professional shall maintain a file on the identification and National Register evaluation of each subject property and on other properties within the area of potential effects. The file shall include the following data used in the determination:
  - 1) Interior and exterior building and neighborhood context photographs per Section 106 keyed to a location map;
  - 2) Information on whether the property and/or district meets the criteria for the National Register inclusion;
  - 3) Information indicating whether the property is contributing or non-contributing as part of a National Register-eligible historic district, or if it is individually eligible for the National Register.
- C. In making a decision concerning the National Register-eligibility of subject properties:
  - 1) The Preservation Professional shall consult with the owner of the property and record such information (owner's knowledge of the past history, age, alterations, etc.) for use by the Preservation Professional.
  - 2) If the property is part of a series of proposed projects in a neighborhood or community, public input must be solicited at a regular or special public hearing called to fulfill the required CDBG and HOME public meeting requirements and in accordance with the Public Participation requirements outlined in Stipulation IX of this Agreement. The State Recipient shall make all public comments regarding identification of historic properties or the history of the district available to the Preservation Professional prior to the Preservation Professional making a decision concerning the eligibility of the subject property.



D. Properties which are determined to be contributing elements of a National Register-listed or eligible historic district shall be subject to further review pursuant to this Agreement;

- E. If the Preservation Professional determines that the subject property does not meet the National Register criteria, then the Preservation Professional shall submit a letter to the State Recipient indicating that there is No Historic Property.

If the extant property is a non-contributing property in either a National Register-listed or eligible historic district, and will be replaced with a new unit, the Preservation Professional shall review the plans and specifications in accordance with Stipulation V.B.4.

- F. If the Preservation Professional needs assistance in determining the eligibility of a property or district for the National Register, or the Preservation Professional and the State Recipient disagree on the eligibility of a property or district, the Preservation Professional shall forward the documentation listed at Stipulation III.B and C. to the SHPO for a thirty (30) day determination of eligibility. If necessary, the State Recipient may obtain a formal determination of eligibility from the Keeper of the National Register in accordance with 36 CFR Part 800.4(c).
- G. Upon the completion of an historic property survey under this Agreement by a Preservation Professional, the results of the survey shall be forwarded to the SHPO for incorporation into the State Historic Resources Inventory.

## **EMERGENCY DEMOLITION**

When emergency demolition of a building is required to eliminate an imminent threat to the health and safety of residents as identified by local or county building inspectors, fire department officials, or other local officials, the State Recipient shall adhere to the following procedures:

- A. The State Recipient shall give the SHPO seven (7) business days to review the property in question, if the nature of the emergency allows. In such cases, the following information shall be forwarded to the SHPO by the State Recipient:
- 1) Identification of the property involved;
  - 2) A clear statement about the nature (structural condition, threat to adjacent properties, etc.) of the emergency;



- 3) Photographs which clearly depict the emergency conditions; and
  - 4) The maximum time-frame allowed by local officials to address the emergency.
- B. If the SHPO determines that the emergency demolition involves a contributing structure which is located in a National Register-listed or eligible historic district or involves a structure which is a National

Register listed or eligible property, the SHPO shall recommend to the State Recipient the appropriate mitigation measures as outlined in Appendix C – *Standard Mitigation Measures for Adverse Effects*. If feasible, the State Recipient shall make every reasonable effort to follow such recommendations.

- C. The Preservation Professional shall maintain records in accordance with Stipulation XIII of this Agreement regarding the emergency undertaking and shall make records available to the public.

## V. TREATMENT OF HISTORIC PROPERTIES

If the Preservation Professional determines that the property is a contributing structure which is either listed in the National Register or is eligible for listing in the National Register (or a lot within such a listed or eligible district), prior to the initiation of any work, the State Recipient shall request the Preservation Professional's review of the proposed work. Within thirty (30) days from the receipt of a request from the State Recipient, the Preservation Professional shall review work write-ups or plans and specifications submitted for all proposed activities not listed as exempt in Stipulation II for their effects to historic properties as follows:

### A. Rehabilitation

Whenever the State Recipient is planning to do rehabilitation, prior to the initiation of rehabilitation activities, the Preservation Professional shall review work write-ups or plans and specifications to determine the effects of the proposed activities to historic properties.

### B. New Construction

Whenever the State Recipient is planning to do reconstruction, in-fill construction, new construction, or additions to existing buildings in a National Register-eligible historic district, the Preservation Professional shall:

- 1) Review work write-ups to ensure that all work is compatible with the architecture of the historic district or adjacent historic buildings in terms of set-backs, size, scale, massing, design, color, features, and materials; and is responsive to the recommended approaches



received for new construction set forth in the *Standards* and input through the required public notification process.

- 2) Develop preliminary design plans in consultation with the State Recipient. Final plans and specifications will be submitted to the Preservation Professional for review and comment prior to the initiation of construction activities. If feasible, the State Recipient shall consult with the Preservation Professional to develop a set of

historically compatible model replacement house plans in advance of any planned reconstruction activities which shall be shared with the public during the initial public hearings held.

- C. The State Recipient shall take into account the comments and recommendations made by the Preservation Professional for both rehabilitation and new construction activities in accordance with one of the following findings:
  - 1) The Preservation Professional may issue a finding of No Effect if the planned activities will not alter characteristics of the property, including its location, setting, or use, that may qualify it for inclusion in the National Register, including any activities undertaken which are listed in Stipulation II, Exempt Activities.
  - 2) The Preservation Professional may issue a finding of No Adverse Effect under one of the three following conditions:
    - a) Properties which are transferred, leased, or sold with adequate restrictions or conditions to ensure preservation of the property's significant historic features;
    - b) Properties which will be rehabilitated in accordance with the *Standards* (Houses rehabilitated using the *Standards* meet the intent of this Agreement by definition and are the preferred solution whenever feasible);
    - c) Properties rehabilitated in accordance with the *Standards* which include some of the treatments outlined in Appendix B, Historic Preservation Guidelines, and in the opinion of the Preservation Professional, the overall project will avoid an Adverse Effect through meeting the intent of the *Standards* and Appendix B, given the condition of the building, economic constraints, and current housing requirements.



If, in the judgement of the Preservation Professional, activities initially planned by the State Recipient do not avoid an Adverse Effect but can be reasonably modified to avoid an Adverse Effect, the Preservation Professional may issue a Conditional No Adverse Effect finding indicating required all modifications. Once the State Recipient has addressed the required modifications, the Preservation Professional may issue a No Adverse Effect finding that permits the State Recipient to proceed with the revised activity.

- 3) The Preservation Professional may issue a finding of Adverse Effect under the following circumstances:

- a) Projects where the Preservation Professional and the State Recipient agree that the proposed activities planned do not meet the intent of the *Standards* to avoid the Adverse Effects, cannot be reasonably modified to meet the intent of the *Standards* as stated in Stipulation C.2.b. and C.2.c. to avoid the Adverse Effects, and the Preservation Professional and the State Recipient agree that the proposed activities are the most feasible solution;
- b) Projects where there is a disagreement about whether the proposed activities meet the intent of the *Standards* to avoid the Adverse Effects;

In the case of Adverse Effect, the Preservation Professional shall issue an Adverse Effect notice to the State Recipient. Such a notice will require the State Recipient to submit the work write-ups or plans and specifications to DCA and the SHPO for their review. If the SHPO does not respond within 21 calendar days from the time of its receipt, the State Recipient may proceed with the project. Projects having Adverse Effects shall require the State Recipient to mitigate the Adverse Effects as outlined in Stipulation X, and propose mitigation in accordance with Appendix C (– *Standard Mitigation Measures for Adverse Effects.*)

## VI. SALVAGE OF ARCHITECTURAL ELEMENTS

Prior to implementation of project activities involving historic properties under this Agreement, the State Recipient shall determine whether or not any architectural elements should be salvaged. If it is determined that such architectural elements exist, the State Recipient shall ensure that such elements are: 1) made available to owners of properties within the district; or 2) may be made available to any other interested party which can be reasonably expected to reuse such materials in the rehabilitation of other historic structures. The State



Recipient shall ensure that such architectural elements are removed in a manner that minimizes damage.

## **VII. TREATMENT OF ARCHEOLOGICAL SITES**

The State Recipient shall notify the SHPO when ground-disturbing activities, to include excavation for footing and foundations, installation of utilities such as sewer, water, storm drains, electrical, gas, leach lines, and septic tanks, are proposed as part of an undertaking and shall comply with the following requirements:

- A. The State Recipient shall request the SHPO's opinion regarding the potential effect of such activities on archaeological properties prior to initiation of project activities. If the SHPO determines that there is a high

probability for the presence of significant archaeological sites or cultural remains within the project area, following the review of background information provided by the State Recipient or a review of state surveys, the State Recipient shall contract a qualified archaeologist to conduct archaeological surveys. The State Recipient shall forward the scope of work for the archeological survey to the SHPO for review and comment.

- B. If the State Recipient and the SHPO determine that there is the potential for archeological properties listed on or eligible for listing on the National Register to be affected by the undertaking, the SHPO shall advise the State Recipient of the appropriate treatment for the archeological properties. If the State Recipient cannot avoid the archeological properties or preserve them in-situ, the State Recipient shall develop a data recovery plan that is consistent with the Secretary of the Interior's Standards and Guidelines for Archeological Documentation (48 FR 44734-37) and take into account the Council's publication "Treatment of Archeological Properties" and subsequent revisions made by the Council and appropriate state guidelines. The State Recipient shall submit treatment plans to the SHPO for review and comment and shall ensure that the approved plan is implemented by qualified archeologists.

## **VIII. DISCOVERY**

If previously unidentified historic properties, including archaeological sites, are discovered during project rehabilitation or construction, the State Recipient shall immediately stop all project activities.

The State Recipient shall immediately contact the Preservation Professional concerning the discovery who shall then be requested to follow procedures outlined in Stipulations V and VI of this Agreement.



**IX. PUBLIC NOTIFICATION REGARDING REHABILITATION  
ACTIVITIES**

- A. The State Recipient, in consultation with the Preservation Professional shall determine the public interest in planned rehabilitation or new constructions activities which may affect potentially historic properties or districts by informing the public about potentially historic properties while meeting its public participation requirements as set forth in the regulations for the CDBG and HOME programs and in complying with 24 CFR Part 58. The State Recipient shall notify the Preservation Professional of the public interest in any project activities covered under the terms of this Agreement.
- B. At a minimum, the public meetings shall include a discussion of the planned rehabilitation activities overall effect to historic properties with emphasis on the following issues, as applicable:
- 1) The significance of the National Register districts;
  - 2) a description of the financial assistance offered to affected property owners;
  - 3) a discussion about the Federal and State Rehabilitation Tax Incentive Programs;
  - 4) local historic codes and standards;
  - 5) the relative costs of preservation verses rehabilitation;
  - 6) the priority given to front facing facades;
  - 7) treatment and/or replacement of windows and doors;
  - 8) treatment and/or replacement of siding;
  - 9) treatment of interior spaces;
  - 10) treatment of foundations;
  - 11) roofing materials;
  - 12) new construction, reconstruction, or in-fill construction standards
  - 13) mitigation of adverse affects;
- C. At any time during the implementation of the measures stipulated in the Agreement, should the public raise an objection pertaining to the treatment of an historic property, the State Recipient shall



Recipient and SHPO and/or Recipient is not being reviewed.

notify the Preservation Professional and take the objection into account. When requested by the objector, the State the Preservation Professional shall consult with the Council to resolve the objection. The State required to cease work while objections are

- D. The State Recipient shall record all comments received at any public meetings, in writing, or by phone, which records shall become part of the Environmental Review Record (See Stipulation XIII).

## RESOLUTION OF ADVERSE EFFECTS

- A. As described in Stipulation V, activities which the Preservation Professional determines will have Adverse Effects to historic properties will require the State Recipient to submit the project to DCA and to the SHPO for their review;
- B. If the State Recipient and the SHPO agree upon how Adverse Effects to historic properties will be mitigated (in accordance with one of the options listed in Appendix C – *Standard Mitigation Measures for Adverse Effects*), the State Recipient will enter into a mitigation agreement with the SHPO. The State Recipient may submit this mitigation agreement for concurrent review at the time it provide the documentation for a finding of adverse effect as outlined in Stipulation V;
- C. If the State Recipient and the SHPO cannot come to an agreement on how the Adverse Effects should be mitigated using the mitigation measures in Appendix C, or if the public objects, or if the project will adversely affect a National Historic Landmark, or if human remains are present within the area of potential effects, the Preservation Professional shall notify the Council and initiate consultation as set forth at 36 CFR Part 800.5 (e).

## XI. DISPUTE RESOLUTION

Should the SHPO object within thirty (30) days to any plans and specifications provided to it for review, or actions proposed pursuant to this Agreement, the State Recipient shall consult with DCA and the SHPO to resolve the objection. If



the State Recipient determines that the objection cannot be resolved, DCA shall request the further comments of the Council pursuant to 36 CFR Part 800.6(b). Any Council comment provided in response to such a request will be taken into account by DCA and the State Recipient in accordance with 36 CFR Part 800.6(c)(2) with reference only to the subject of the dispute. The State Recipient's responsibility to carry out all other actions under this Agreement that are not subjects of the dispute will remain uncharged.

## **XII. REVIEW OF PUBLIC OBJECTIONS**

At any time during implementation of the measures stipulated in this Agreement, should any objection to any such measure or its manner of implementation be raised by a member of the public, the State Recipient shall take the objection into account, notify the Preservation Professional of the objection, and consult as needed with the objecting party, the SHPO, or the Council to resolve the objection, and consult as needed with the objecting party, DCA, the SHPO, or the Council to resolve the objection.

## **XIII. MONITORING AND REPORTING**

- A. DCA and the State Recipient will cooperate with the SHPO and Council should they request to review files for activities at specific project sites when given reasonable advance notification of such intent.
- B. DCA will also review the activities of State Recipients to ensure compliance with this Agreement as part of its normal CDBG and HOME program monitoring activities.
- C. The Preservation Professional shall provide a report of all review activities to the State Recipient which shall become part of the Environmental Review Record maintained by the State Recipient.
- D. DCA will require State Recipients to complete a final report which shall include actions undertaken involving potentially historic properties. DCA shall provide access to SHPO on an ongoing basis of all final reports received from State Recipients.

## **XIV. RECORD KEEPING**

The State Recipient shall maintain records of all activities undertaken pursuant to this Agreement which shall become part of the Environmental Review Record for the project including:

- A. All records related to the selection of the Preservation Professional which clearly documents adherence to the Professional Qualification (36 CFR 61) or Recommended Qualifications (Appendix A);



- B. All records indicating the compliance of each property with the Exempt Activities at Stipulations II;
- C. All records of correspondence and finding letters provided by the Preservation Professional to the State Recipient;
- D. All records indicating all mitigation measures taken in accordance with Appendix C;
- E. All records indicating further consultations with SHPO and/or the Advisory Council;
- F. All records of public comments received during public hearings and written or telephonic comments received from the public at all other times;
- G. All records (excluding permanent public records submitted in accordance with a selected mitigation measure under Appendix C) shall be maintained for a minimum of three (3) years after completion of each project and shall be made available to the general public and all other interested parties upon request during this timeframe.

#### **XV. AMENDMENTS**

Amendments to this agreement shall be made in the following manner:

- A. Any party to this Agreement may request that it be amended or modified, whereupon DCA, SHPO, and the Council will consult in accordance with 36 CFR 800.13 to consider such revisions;
- B. Any resulting amendments or addenda shall be developed and executed among DCA, SHPO, and Council in the same manner as the original Agreement.

#### **XVI. TERMINATION**

Any party to this Agreement may withdraw from its participation in the Agreement by providing thirty (30) calendar days notice to the other parties of their reasons for withdrawing.

#### **XVII. FAILURE TO COMPLY WITH THIS AGREEMENT**

In the event that the State Recipient does not carry out the terms of the Agreement, the State Recipient shall comply with 36 CFR Section 800.4 through 800.6 with regard to each individual CDBG or HOME project for which DCA has awarded funding to the State Recipient.



**EXECUTION AND IMPLEMENTATION** of this Programmatic Agreement evidences that DCA has satisfied its Section 106 responsibilities for all undertakings of the State administered Community Development Block Grant and HOME Investment Partnership Programs.

**Georgia Department of Community Affairs**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Assistant Commissioner

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**Historic Preservation Division, Department of Natural Resources**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Director and State Historic Preservation Officer

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**Advisory Council on Historic Preservation**

\_\_\_\_\_  
Executive Director

\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

**APPENDIX A – *Recommended Qualifications for Historic Preservationist***

In accordance with Stipulation I of this Agreement, a Preservationist Professional must meet, at a minimum, The Secretary of the Interior's Professional Qualifications Standards at 36 CFR 61. In addition, the following guidelines will be used to assemble the List of qualified Preservation Professionals outlined in Stipulation I.B.:

1. If the Preservation Professional is to identify historic properties pursuant to Stipulation III of this Agreement, have a minimum of one-year experience in applying the National Register of Historic Places eligibility criteria to buildings, structures and districts;
2. If the Preservation Professional is to review proposed rehabilitation work pursuant to Stipulation IV of this Agreement, have a minimum of one year experience in applying the *Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation* to rehabilitation projects; and
3. Have demonstrated the successful application of acquired proficiencies in the field of historic preservation by meeting at least one of the following:



forms

- a. Have demonstrated experience in completing the application for the rehabilitation of historic buildings pursuant to the National Park Service's Federal Historic Preservation Tax Credit program; or
- b. Have demonstrated experience in developing plans for the rehabilitation or restoration of historic buildings that have been implemented; or
- c. Have received an award from a local, state, or national organization in recognition for a historic building rehabilitation or restoration project; or
- d. Have written an article in a professional journal, a chapter in an edited book, or a monograph on the subject of historic building rehabilitation or restoration; or
- e. Have presented a paper or organized a session at a professional conference on the subject of historic building rehabilitation or restoration; or
- f. Have served on local historic preservation commission, state National Register of Historic Places Review Board, or state or national historic preservation organization's board or committee in the capacity of architectural historian or architect.

## **APPENDIX B – *Historic Rehabilitation Guidelines***

### **A. Window Guidelines**

1. To the extent feasible, windows should be repaired and maintained in place. However, the replacement of windows due to either their deterioration, failed lead-paint surface condition, or poor energy performance which are not part of street facing-elevations, and alterations to window openings which are not part of the street-facing façade including additions, deletions, and enlargements required for structural reasons (including ADA, or other significant design purpose) are permitted. In the case of window replacement or alterations to window openings, the State Recipient shall ensure that:
  - a. The vinyl, metal, or wood replacement windows will closely replicate the existing windows in size and window light pattern to the extent feasible (e.g. jalousie windows may not be feasible to



replace with new jalousie windows due to severe energy loss considerations); and

- b. The replacement windows must be energy efficient models which may either be double-pane (insulated glass) wood, metal (must have thermally broken frames), or vinyl, or may be single-pane wood with a storm window.
2. Individual windows on the street-facing façade may be replaced if they are in an advanced state of deterioration of 50% or more. However, when such materials must be removed or replaced, the State Recipient shall ensure that:
    - a. All replacement windows will meet the above guidelines; and
    - b. The replacement windows installed on the street-facing elevations will not alter the existing window opening area and configuration.

*Preferred solution:* If windows on the street-facing façade are in an advanced state of deterioration of 50% or more and must be replaced, windows on other elevations that are in repairable condition may be relocated to the street-facing façade. If a replacement sash unit can be used which permits saving of the existing window casings and jambs, this is preferable to complete window replacement. In addition, a vinyl jamb liner can be used which encapsulates lead paint surfaces which are subject to friction wear.

## **B. Door Guidelines**

1. To the extent feasible, doors should be repaired and maintained in place. However, the replacement of doors due to either their deterioration, failed lead-paint surface condition, or poor energy performance with are not part of the street facing-façade, and alterations to door openings which are not

part of the street facing-façade, and alterations to door openings which are not part of the street-facing façade including additions, deletions, and enlargements required for structural reasons (including ADA, or other significant design purpose) are permitted. In the case of door replacement or alterations to door openings, the State Recipient shall ensure that:

- a. The wood or metal replacement door will, to the extent feasible, closely replicate the existing doors in size and door style; and
- b. The replacement doors must be energy efficient models which may either be wood or metal, and if the doors are glazed, the glazing must be double-pane (insulated glass).



2. Doors on the street-facing façade in an advanced state of deterioration of 50% or more may be replaced. However, when such materials must be removed or replaced, the State Recipient shall ensure that:
- a. All replacement doors specified meet the guidelines; and
  - b. The replacement doors installed on the street-facing façade will not alter the existing door opening area and configuration.

### C. Siding Guidelines

- 1. To the extent feasible, siding should be repaired and maintained in place. However, the replacement or encapsulation of wood siding which is in advanced stages of deterioration of 50% or more is permitted. When such materials must be replaced or encapsulated, the State Recipient shall ensure that:
  - a. In order to avoid further deterioration of wood elements, prior to installation of any new siding materials all sources of existing moisture shall be mitigated and repairs shall be made to any damage sub-surface materials, and further moisture penetration into the building shall be prevented.
  - b. Siding shall be installed in a manner that will not irreversibly damage or obscure the building's architectural features, decorative shingle work, and trim.
  - c. To the extent feasible, siding will be similar to the existing siding in size, profile, and finish.

*Recommended materials: vinyl, concrete-fiber board, cement board* Not recommended: masonite, aluminum, asphalt

### D. Exterior Trim and Architectural Elements

- 1. To the extent feasible, existing exterior trim and architectural elements (porches, dormers, gables, cornices, railings, columns, awnings, etc.)

should be repaired and maintained in place, especially if located on the front-facing façade. However, replacement of wood or other trim materials which are in advanced stages of deterioration of 50% or more is permitted. When such materials must be removed or replaced, the State Recipient shall ensure that:

- a. Preference shall be given to replacement materials which model the basic visual characteristics (not necessarily replicate) of the original trim or architectural elements in terms of size and location. For example, a flat window casing which is the same width as the



original window casing is preferable to a stock casing that reduces the scale of the original trim.

2. Activities which result in the alteration or removal of architectural elements that do not comprise the front elevation and which are either in advanced stages of deterioration of 50% or more, or are deemed necessary by the State Recipient for economic considerations, lead-paint poisoning concerns, or to meet ADA requirements are permitted. However, the State Recipient shall ensure that replacement materials will model the basic visual characteristics (though not necessarily replicate) of the original trim in terms of size and location.
3. Porch enclosures on the front façade are permitted only if no historic materials are removed or permanently altered and new materials can be easily removed at a future date. Such enclosures shall, to the extent possible, not obstruct the view of primary architectural elements.

#### **E. Interior Guidelines**

1. Program activities involving interior changes which do not affect the exterior of the property are permitted. However, the State Recipient shall ensure that each of the following guidelines is followed:
  - a. *Interior Doorways:* If interior doors must be removed, install wood paneled doors in rooms facing the street.
  - b. *Ceilings:* Where ceilings need to be lowered, they should never impact any window frames. In addition, if beaded-board ceilings are in good condition and can be left exposed, they should be painted. If they are not left exposed, the beaded ceiling should remain in place and be covered with sheetrock.
  - c. *Walls:* Plaster finishes may be removed from walls if there are not decorative elements. It is recommended that the lathe be retained on interior walls and removed on exterior walls to allow installation of insulation. If unpainted wood surfaces (such as beaded board, v-groove, or tongue and groove board, etc) exists, retain in place. If possible, scrape painted wood surfaces (in accordance with *Preservation Brief #37: Appropriate Methods for Reducing Lead-Paint Hazards in Historic Housing*) and repaint.
  - d. *Floors:* Wood floors should either be refinished or carpeted. Vinyl coverings may be used in baths and kitchens, but not in main living areas or hallways.
  - e. *Closets:* Where closets do not exist, attempt to install in most inconspicuous location in room (e.g. behind door giving access to room or at one side of chimney). If there are wood surfaces in a room, try to leave these in place (see treatments listed under



“Walls”). Do not remove and attempt to “girdle” the closet with the existing wood surface materials.

- f. *Fireplaces*: If mantels and surround are missing, these do not have to be reconstructed. However, where decorative iron surround or tile work remain in main rooms, construct a simple mantel consisting of a wood shelf with simple wood triangular supports. Leave hearth at flood level.
  - g. *Floor Plans*: A reasonable effort should be made to keep the existing floor plan of main rooms intact. If changes need to be made, it is preferable that they should be made in the rear rooms and/or second floor spaces. Where hallways are necessary to give access to rooms, the original walls should remain wherever possible, and the new walls should subdivide the existing rooms to create a hallway. Maintain the front rooms as is. In “shotgun” dwellings, if a hall is necessary, install it along one side of house to give access to rooms on the opposite side.
2. For purposes of lead-based paint abatement, the State Recipient shall verify that lead paint exists through testing. If lead paint is present, encapsulation or removal of interior surfaces and materials which do not affect the appearance of the exterior are permitted whenever all interior alterations are done in accordance with each of the guidelines.

### **APPENDIX C – Standard Mitigation Measures for Adverse Effects**

In cases of Adverse Effects, the State Recipient and the Preservation Professional may develop a mitigation plan that includes one or more of the following Standard Mitigation Measures whenever the Preservation Professional determines that the State Recipient cannot conduct the project so that it will avoid Adverse Effects as described in Stipulation V of this Agreement:



**A. Alteration of the Historic Property**

If the State Recipient determines that the subject property cannot be feasibly rehabilitated in accordance with the recommendations provided by the Preservation Professional (developed in accordance with Stipulation V and the guidelines Appendix B), the following procedure shall be followed:

1. The State Recipient shall ensure that prior to project implementation the historic property is documented. In consultation with the SHPO, one of the following documentation methodologies shall be selected:
  - a. Contributing Structure in an Eligible Historic District: The State Recipient shall provide a floor plan, and original archival-quality, large-format, black and white photographs as required for the 106 Review process. A brief history and explanation of the final condition of the structure prior to demolition shall be written not to exceed two (2) pages. In addition to submittal to the SHPO, this documentation shall be placed with either a local historical society archive, local library historical collection, or, at minimum kept as a permanent record by the State Recipient.
  - b. Building Eligible for Individual Listing: The State Recipient shall document the historic property in accordance with the Historic American Buildings Survey (HABS) Standards or other acceptable recordation method developed in consultation with the SHPO.
2. The State Recipient shall develop plans and specifications in consultation with the Preservation Professional which will, to the greatest extent feasible, preserve the basic character of the structure with regard to the scale, massing, and texture of the original.
3. Primary emphasis shall be given to the major street visible elevations and significant contributing features there, including trim, windows, doors, porches, etc., will be repaired or replaced with either in-kind materials or materials which come as close as possible to the original materials in basic appearance;
4. Any enclosures of existing porches shall be done in such a manner that none of the intact historic materials are removed or destroyed and in such a manner that a future restoration could be carried out by removing the added materials;
5. Any room additions will be built in a manner that does not “replicate” the original structure and that can be clearly distinguished from the earlier period;

**B. Demolition of the Historic Property**

If the State Recipient determines that the historic unit cannot be feasibly rehabilitated in accordance with the recommendations provided by the Preservation Professional



(developed in accordance with Stipulation V and the guidelines in Appendix B), or the historic building must be acquired for purposed of easement assemblage or sub-standard lot correction, and that the building must be demolished, then the State Recipient shall adhere to the followed guidelines:

1. The State Recipient shall follow the recordation guidelines outline in Section A.1.;
2. The State Recipient shall advertise the availability of the housing unit (with or without the land on which the house is built) prior to its demolition for a minimum of thirty (30) days. Any interested local preservation society of other pre-identified interested parties may be given a “first right of refusal” at an agreed upon price (recommended price based on actual cost of relocation only) and shall have forty-five (45) days to remove the structure from the site;
3. If more than one offer is receive, all offers shall be reviewed by the Preservation Professional and the best offer selected with regards to the appropriateness of the acquiring group’s proposed use, relocation site, the feasibility of the planned movement of the structure, plans for its temporary preservation and/or the partial or complete rehabilitation. The State Recipient shall negotiate any funds which the acquiring group may use to defray the cost of moving the structure which are derived from the avoided cost of demolition;
4. If feasible, the Preservation Professional shall ensure that all historic properties are moved in accordance with approaches recommended in *Moving Historic Buildings* (John Obed Curtis, 1979) by a professional house mover who has the capability to move historic properties properly;
5. If no interested party willing to relocate the building can be identified, the State Recipient shall then advertise the availability of historic materials or shall attempt to reuse such materials in other compatible historic homes being rehabilitated by the State Recipient. The Preservation Professional shall consider the most appropriate planned use of historic materials. All salvaged materials must be removed from the site within thirty (30) days of their advertised availability.

#### **C. Reconstruction (demolition and replacement) of Historic Properties**

The State Recipient shall ensure that, to the greatest extent feasible, the reconstruction of any historic structure deemed infeasible for rehabilitation shall be carried out in a manner

that is compatible with the architecture of the original unit and/or other buildings within the surrounding historic district in terms of set-backs, size, scale, massing, design, color, features, and materials, and is responsive to the recommended approaches for new construction set forth in the *Standards*. The following procedures shall be followed to ensure the historic compatibility of the proposed reconstruction:



1. The State Recipient shall follow the recordation guidelines outlined in Section A.1.;
2. The State Recipient shall follow the guidelines for demolition outlined in Section C;
3. The State Recipient shall develop preliminary plans in consultation with the Preservation Professional. (The State Recipient shall consult with the Preservation Professional to develop a set of historically compatible model replacement house plans in advance of any planned reconstruction activities which shall be shared with the public during the initial public hearings held.) Final construction drawings used in the bidding process, including elevations, shall be submitted to the Preservation Professional for review and comment prior to the award of a construction contract and the initiation of construction activities.
4. If the State Recipient determines that the proposed plans and specifications for the reconstruction do not meet the *Standards* as interpreted by the Preservation Professional, the State Recipient shall notify the Council and initiate consultation as set forth at 36 CFR Part 800.5 (e).

#### **D. New Construction and In-Fill Construction in Historic Districts**

The State Recipient shall ensure that, to the greatest extent feasible, the construction of new housing units in an eligible historic district shall be carried out in a manner that is compatible with the architecture of other buildings within the surrounding historic district in terms of set-backs, size, scale, massing, design, color, features, and materials, and is responsive to the recommended approaches for new construction set forth in the *Standards*. The following procedures shall be followed to ensure the historic compatibility of the proposed new construction:

1. The State Recipient shall develop preliminary plans in consultation with the Preservation Professional. (The State Recipient shall consult with the Preservation Professional to develop a set of historically compatible house plans in advance of any planned construction activities which shall be shared with the public during the initial public hearings held). Final construction drawings used in the bidding process, including elevations, shall be submitted to the Preservation Professional for review and comment prior to the award of a construction contract and the initiation of construction activities.
2. If the State Recipient determines that the proposed plans and specifications for the reconstruction do not meet the *Standards* as interpreted by the Preservation Professional, the State Recipient shall



notify the Council and initiate consultation as set forth at 36 CFR Part 800.5(e).



**Item: XI**  
**24 CFR Part 135**  
**Economic Opportunities for Low- and**  
**Very Low- Income Persons**  
**(Section 3 Regulation)**







[Home Page](#) > [Electronic Code of Federal Regulations](#) > [Electronic Code of Federal Regulations](#)

## Electronic Code of Federal Regulations

*e-CFR*  
TM

e-CFR Data is current as of September 10, 2010

### Title 24: Housing and Urban Development

[Browse Next](#)

#### PART 135—ECONOMIC OPPORTUNITIES FOR LOW- AND VERY LOW-INCOME PERSONS

##### Section Contents

##### Subpart A—General Provisions

- [§ 135.1 Purpose.](#)
- [§ 135.2 Effective date of regulation.](#)
- [§ 135.3 Applicability.](#)
- [§ 135.5 Definitions.](#)
- [§ 135.7 Delegation of authority.](#)
- [§ 135.9 Requirements applicable to HUD NOFAs for section 3 covered programs.](#)
- [§ 135.11 Other laws governing training, employment, and contracting.](#)

##### Subpart B—Economic Opportunities for Section 3 Residents and Section 3 Business Concerns

- [§ 135.30 Numerical goals for meeting the greatest extent feasible requirement.](#)
- [§ 135.32 Responsibilities of the recipient.](#)
- [§ 135.34 Preference for section 3 residents in training and employment opportunities.](#)
- [§ 135.36 Preference for section 3 business concerns in contracting opportunities.](#)
- [§ 135.38 Section 3 clause.](#)
- [§ 135.40 Providing other economic opportunities.](#)

##### Subpart C [Reserved]

##### Subpart D—Complaint and Compliance Review

- [§ 135.70 General.](#)
- [§ 135.72 Cooperation in achieving compliance.](#)
- [§ 135.74 Section 3 compliance review procedures.](#)
- [§ 135.76 Filing and processing complaints.](#)

##### Subpart E—Reporting and Recordkeeping

- [§ 135.90 Reporting.](#)
- [§ 135.92 Recordkeeping and access to records.](#)
- [Appendix to Part 135](#)

**Authority:** 12 U.S.C. 1701u; 42 U.S.C. 3535(d).

**Source:** 59 FR 33880, June 30, 1994, unless otherwise noted.



**Effective Date Note:** At 59 FR 33880, June 30, 1994, part 135 was revised effective August 1, 1994 through June 30, 1995. At 60 FR 28325, May 31, 1995, the effective period was extended until the final rule implementing changes made to section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968 by the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992 is published and becomes effective.

## Subpart A—General Provisions

[top](#)

### 135.1 Purpose.

[top](#)

a) *Section 3.* The purpose of section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968 (12 U.S.C. 701u) (section 3) is to ensure that employment and other economic opportunities generated by certain HUD financial assistance shall, to the greatest extent feasible, and consistent with existing Federal, State and local laws and regulations, be directed to low- and very low-income persons, particularly those who are recipients of government assistance for housing, and to business concerns which provide economic opportunities to low- and very low-income persons.

b) *Part 135.* The purpose of this part is to establish the standards and procedures to be followed to ensure that the objectives of section 3 are met.

### 135.2 Effective date of regulation.

[top](#)

The regulations of this part will remain in effect until the date the final rule adopting the regulations of this part with or without changes is published and becomes effective, at which point the final rule will remain in effect.

[30 FR 28326, May 31, 1995]

### 135.3 Applicability.

[top](#)

a) *Section 3 covered assistance.* Section 3 applies to the following HUD assistance (section 3 covered assistance):

i) *Public and Indian housing assistance.* Section 3 applies to training, employment, contracting and other economic opportunities arising from the expenditure of the following public and Indian housing assistance:

) Development assistance provided pursuant to section 5 of the U.S. Housing Act of 1937 (1937 Act);

i) Operating assistance provided pursuant to section 9 of the 1937 Act; and

ii) Modernization assistance provided pursuant to section 14 of the 1937 Act;

b) *Housing and community development assistance.* Section 3 applies to training, employment, contracting and other economic opportunities arising in connection with the expenditure of housing assistance (including section 8 assistance, and including other housing assistance not administered by the Assistant Secretary of Housing) and community development assistance that is used for the following projects;







*Applicant* means any entity which makes an application for section 3 covered assistance, and includes, but is not limited to, any State, unit of local government, public housing agency, Indian housing authority, Indian tribe, or other public body, public or private nonprofit organization, private agency or institution, mortgagee, developer, limited dividend sponsor, builder, property manager, community housing development organization (CHDO), resident management corporation, resident council, or cooperative association.

*Assistant Secretary* means the Assistant Secretary for Fair Housing and Equal Opportunity.

*Business concern* means a business entity formed in accordance with State law, and which is licensed under State, county or municipal law to engage in the type of business activity for which it was formed.

*Business concern that provides economic opportunities for low- and very low-income persons.* See definition of "section 3 business concern" in this section.

*Contract.* See the definition of "section 3 covered contract" in this section.

*Contractor* means any entity which contracts to perform work generated by the expenditure of section 3 covered assistance, or for work in connection with a section 3 covered project.

*Employment opportunities generated by section 3 covered assistance* means all employment opportunities generated by the expenditure of section 3 covered public and Indian housing assistance (i.e., operating assistance, development assistance and modernization assistance, as described in §135.3(a)(1)). With respect to section 3 covered housing and community development assistance, this term means all employment opportunities arising in connection with section 3 covered projects (as described in §135.3(a)(2)), including management and administrative jobs connected with the section 3 covered project. Management and administrative jobs include architectural, engineering or related professional services required to prepare plans, drawings, specifications, or work write-ups; and jobs directly related to administrative support of these activities, e.g., construction manager, relocation specialist, payroll clerk, etc.

*Housing authority (HA)* means, collectively, public housing agency and Indian housing authority.

*Housing and community development assistance* means any financial assistance provided or otherwise made available through a HUD housing or community development program through any grant, loan, loan guarantee, cooperative agreement, or contract, and includes community development funds in the form of community development block grants, and loans guaranteed under section 108 of the Housing and Community Development Act of 1974, as amended. Housing and community development assistance does not include financial assistance provided through a contract of insurance or guaranty.

*Housing development* means low-income housing owned, developed, or operated by public housing agencies or Indian housing authorities in accordance with HUD's public and Indian housing program regulations codified in 24 CFR Chapter IX.

*HUD Youthbuild programs* mean programs that receive assistance under subtitle D of Title IV of the National Affordable Housing Act, as amended by the Housing and Community Development Act of 1992 (42 U.S.C. 12899), and provide disadvantaged youth with opportunities for employment, education, leadership development, and training in the construction or rehabilitation of housing for homeless individuals and members of low- and very low-income families.

*Indian tribes* shall have the meaning given this term in 24 CFR part 571.

*TPA* means the Job Training Partnership Act (29 U.S.C. 1579(a)).

*Low-income person.* See the definition of "section 3 resident" in this section.

*Metropolitan area* means a metropolitan statistical area (MSA), as established by the Office of Management and Budget.

*Neighborhood area* means:



(1) For HUD housing programs, a geographical location within the jurisdiction of a unit of general local government (but not the entire jurisdiction) designated in ordinances, or other local documents as a neighborhood, village, or similar geographical designation.

(2). or HUD community development programs, see the definition, if provided, in the regulations for the applicable community development program, or the definition for this term in 24 CFR 570.204(c)(1).

*New hires* mean full-time employees for permanent, temporary or seasonal employment opportunities.

*Nonmetropolitan county* means any county outside of a metropolitan area.

*Other HUD programs* means HUD programs, other than HUD public and Indian housing programs, that provide housing and community development assistance for "section 3 covered projects," as defined in this section.

*Public housing resident* has the meaning given this term in 24 CFR part 963.

*Recipient* means any entity which receives section 3 covered assistance, directly from HUD or from another recipient and includes, but is not limited to, any State, unit of local government, PHA, IHA, Indian tribe, or other public body, public or private nonprofit organization, private agency or institution, mortgagor, developer, limited dividend sponsor, builder, property manager, community housing development organization, resident management corporation, resident council, or cooperative association. Recipient also includes any successor, assignee or transferee of any such entity, but does not include any ultimate beneficiary under the HUD program to which section 3 applies and does not include contractors.

Section 3 means section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, as amended (12 U.S.C. 1701u).

*Section 3 business concern* means a business concern, as defined in this section—

(i) it is 51 percent or more owned by section 3 residents; or

(2) Whose permanent, full-time employees include persons, at least 30 percent of whom are currently section 3 residents, or within three years of the date of first employment with the business concern were section 3 residents; or

(3) That provides evidence of a commitment to subcontract in excess of 25 percent of the dollar award of all subcontracts to be awarded to business concerns that meet the qualifications set forth in paragraphs (1) or (2) in this definition of "section 3 business concern."

*Section 3 clause* means the contract provisions set forth in §135.38.

**Section 3 covered activity** means any activity which is funded by section 3 covered assistance public and Indian housing assistance.

*Section 3 covered assistance* means: (1) Public and Indian housing development assistance provided pursuant to section 5 of the 1937 Act;

(2) Public and Indian housing operating assistance provided pursuant to section 9 of the 1937 Act;

(3) Public and Indian housing modernization assistance provided pursuant to section 14 of the 1937 Act;

(4) Assistance provided under any HUD housing or community development program that is expended for work arising in connection with:

(i) Housing rehabilitation (including reduction and abatement of lead-based paint hazards, but excluding routine maintenance, repair and replacement);



ii) Housing construction; or

iii) Other public construction project (which includes other buildings or improvements, regardless of ownership).

*Section 3 covered contract* means a contract or subcontract (including a professional service contract) awarded by a recipient or contractor for work generated by the expenditure of section 3 covered assistance, or for work arising in connection with a section 3 covered project. "Section 3 covered contracts" do not include contracts awarded under HUD's procurement program, which are governed by the Federal Acquisition Regulation System (see 48 CFR, Chapter 1). "Section 3 covered contracts" also do not include contracts for the purchase of supplies and materials. However, whenever a contract for materials includes the installation of the materials, the contract constitutes a section 3 covered contract. For example, a contract for the purchase and installation of a furnace would be a section 3 covered contract because the contract is for work (i.e., the installation of the furnace) and thus is covered by section 3.

*Section 3 covered project* means the construction, reconstruction, conversion or rehabilitation of housing including reduction and abatement of lead-based paint hazards), other public construction which includes buildings or improvements (regardless of ownership) assisted with housing or community development assistance.

*Section 3 joint venture.* See §135.40. Section 3 resident means: (1) A public housing resident; or

2) An individual who resides in the metropolitan area or nonmetropolitan county in which the section 3 covered assistance is expended, and who is:

i) A *low-income person*, as this term is defined in section 3(b)(2) of the 1937 Act (42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)(2)). Section 3(b)(2) of the 1937 Act defines this term to mean families (including single persons) whose incomes do not exceed 80 per centum of the median income for the area, as determined by the Secretary, with adjustments for smaller and larger families, except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 80 per centum of the median for the area on the basis of the Secretary's findings that such variations are necessary because of prevailing levels of construction costs or unusually high or low-income families; or

ii) A *very low-income person*, as this term is defined in section 3(b)(2) of the 1937 Act (42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)(2)). Section 3(b)(2) of the 1937 Act (42 U.S.C. 1437a(b)(2)) defines this term to mean families (including single persons) whose incomes do not exceed 50 per centum of the median family income for the area, as determined by the Secretary with adjustments for smaller and larger families, except that the Secretary may establish income ceilings higher or lower than 50 per centum of the median for the area on the basis of the Secretary's findings that such variations are necessary because of unusually high or low family incomes.

3) A person seeking the training and employment preference provided by section 3 bears the responsibility of providing evidence (if requested) that the person is eligible for the preference.

*Section 8 assistance* means assistance provided under section 8 of the 1937 Act (42 U.S.C. 1437f) pursuant to 24 CFR part 882, subpart G.

*Service area* means the geographical area in which the persons benefitting from the section 3 covered project reside. The service area shall not extend beyond the unit of general local government in which the section 3 covered assistance is expended. In HUD's Indian housing programs, the service area, for AIAs established by an Indian tribe as a result of the exercise of the tribe's sovereign power, is limited to the area of tribal jurisdiction.

*Subcontractor* means any entity (other than a person who is an employee of the contractor) which has a contract with a contractor to undertake a portion of the contractor's obligation for the performance of work generated by the expenditure of section 3 covered assistance, or arising in connection with a section 3 covered project.

*Very low-income person.* See the definition of "section 3 resident" in this section.



*Youthbuild programs.* See the definition of "HUD Youthbuild programs" in this section.

[50 FR 33880, June 30, 1994, as amended at 61 FR 5206, Feb. 9, 1996]

### § 135.7 Delegation of authority.



[top](#)

Except as may be otherwise provided in this part, the functions and responsibilities of the Secretary under section 3, and described in this part, are delegated to the Assistant Secretary for Fair Housing and Equal Opportunity. The Assistant Secretary is further authorized to redelegate functions and responsibilities to other employees of HUD; *provided however*, that the authority to issue rules and regulations under this part, which authority is delegated to the Assistant Secretary, may not be redelegated by the Assistant Secretary.

### § 135.9 Requirements applicable to HUD NOFAs for section 3 covered programs.



[top](#)

(a) *Certification of compliance with part 135.* All notices of funding availability (NOFAs) issued by HUD that announce the availability of funding covered by section 3 shall include a provision in the NOFA that notifies applicants that section 3 and the regulations in part 135 are applicable to funding awards made under the NOFA. Additionally the NOFA shall require as an application submission requirement (which may be specified in the NOFA or application kit) a certification by the applicant that the applicant will comply with the regulations in part 135. (For PHAs, this requirement will be met where a PHA Resolution in Support of the Application is submitted.) With respect to application evaluation, HUD will accept an applicant's certification unless there is evidence substantially challenging the certification.

(b) *Statement of purpose in NOFAs.* (1) For competitively awarded assistance in which the grants are for enterprises administered by an HA, and those activities are anticipated to generate significant training, employment or contracting opportunities, the NOFA must include a statement that one of the purposes of the assistance is to give to the greatest extent feasible, and consistent with existing Federal, State and local laws and regulations, job training, employment, contracting and other economic opportunities to section 3 residents and section 3 business concerns.

(2) For competitively awarded assistance involving housing rehabilitation, construction or other public construction, where the amount awarded to the applicant may exceed \$200,000, the NOFA must include a statement that one of the purposes of the assistance is to give, to the greatest extent feasible, and consistent with existing Federal, State and local laws and regulations, job training, employment, contracting and other economic opportunities to section 3 residents and section 3 business concerns.

(c) *Section 3 as NOFA evaluation criteria.* Where not otherwise precluded by statute, in the evaluation of applications for the award of assistance, consideration shall be given to the extent to which an applicant has demonstrated that it will train and employ section 3 residents and contract with section 3 business concerns for economic opportunities generated in connection with the assisted project or activity. The evaluation criteria to be utilized, and the rating points to be assigned, will be specified in the NOFA.

### § 135.11 Other laws governing training, employment, and contracting.



[top](#)

Other laws and requirements that are applicable or may be applicable to the economic opportunities generated from the expenditure of section 3 covered assistance include, but are not necessarily limited to those listed in this section.

(a) *Procurement standards for States and local governments (24 CFR 85.36)* —(1) *General.* Nothing in this part 135 prescribes specific methods of procurement. However, neither section 3 nor the requirements of this part 135 supersede the general requirement of 24 CFR 85.36(c) that all procurement transactions be conducted in a competitive manner. Consistent with 24 CFR 85.36(c)(2),



ection 3 is a Federal statute that expressly encourages, to the maximum extent feasible, a geographic reference in the evaluation of bids or proposals.

2) *Flexible Subsidy Program.* Multifamily project mortgagors in the Flexible Subsidy Program are not required to utilize the methods of procurement in 24 CFR 85.36(d), and are not permitted to utilize methods of procurement that would result in their award of a contract to a business concern that submits a bid higher than the lowest responsive bid. A multifamily project mortgagor, however, must ensure that, to the greatest extent feasible, the procurement practices it selects provide preference to section 3 business concerns.

b) *Procurement standards for other recipients (OMB Circular No. A-110).* Nothing in this part prescribes specific methods of procurement for grants and other agreements with institutions of higher education, hospitals, and other nonprofit organizations. Consistent with the requirements set forth in OMB Circular No. A-110, section 3 is a Federal statute that expressly encourages a geographic preference in the evaluation of bids or proposals.

c) *Federal labor standards provisions.* Certain construction contracts are subject to compliance with the requirement to pay prevailing wages determined under Davis-Bacon Act (40 U.S.C. 276a—276a-7) and implementing U.S. Department of Labor regulations in 29 CFR part 5. Additionally, certain HUD-assisted rehabilitation and maintenance activities on public and Indian housing developments are subject to compliance with the requirement to pay prevailing wage rates, as determined or adopted by HUD, to laborers and mechanics employed in this work. Apprentices and trainees may be utilized on this work only to the extent permitted under either Department of Labor regulations at 29 CFR part 5 or for work subject to HUD-determined prevailing wage rates, HUD policies and guidelines. These requirements include adherence to the wage rates and ratios of apprentices or trainees to journeymen set out in approved apprenticeship and training programs,” as described in paragraph (d) of this section.

d) *Approved apprenticeship and trainee programs.* Certain apprenticeship and trainee programs have been approved by various Federal agencies. Approved apprenticeship and trainee programs include: an apprenticeship program approved by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training of the Department of Labor, or a State Apprenticeship Agency, or an on-the-job training program approved by the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training, in accordance with the regulations at 29 CFR part 5; or a training program approved by HUD in accordance with HUD policies and guidelines, as applicable. Participation in an approved apprenticeship program does not, in and of itself, demonstrate compliance with the regulations of this part.

e) *Compliance with Executive Order 11246.* Certain contractors covered by this part are subject to compliance with Executive Order 11246, as amended by Executive Order 12086, and the Department of Labor regulations issued pursuant thereto (41 CFR chapter 60) which provide that no person shall be discriminated against on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, or national origin in all phases of employment during the performance of Federal or Federally assisted construction contracts.

#### Subpart B—Economic Opportunities for Section 3 Residents and Section 3 Business Concerns

 [top](#)

##### 135.30 Numerical goals for meeting the greatest extent feasible requirement.

 [top](#)

a) *General.* (1) Recipients and covered contractors may demonstrate compliance with the “greatest extent feasible” requirement of section 3 by meeting the numerical goals set forth in this section for providing training, employment, and contracting opportunities to section 3 residents and section 3 business concerns.

2) The goals established in this section apply to the entire amount of section 3 covered assistance awarded to a recipient in any Federal Fiscal Year (FY), commencing with the first FY following the effective date of this rule.

3) For recipients that do not engage in training, or hiring, but award contracts to contractors that will



engage in training, hiring, and subcontracting, recipients must ensure that, to the greatest extent feasible, contractors will provide training, employment, and contracting opportunities to section 3 residents and section 3 business concerns.

(4) The numerical goals established in this section represent minimum numerical targets.

(b) *Training and employment* The numerical goals set forth in paragraph (b) of this section apply to new hires. The numerical goals reflect the aggregate hires. Efforts to employ section 3 residents, to the greatest extent feasible, should be made at all job levels.

(1) *Numerical goals for section 3 covered public and Indian housing programs.* Recipients of section 3 covered public and Indian housing assistance (as described in §135.5) and their contractors and subcontractors may demonstrate compliance with this part by committing to employ section 3 residents as:

(i) 10 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one year period beginning in FY 1995;

(ii) 20 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one period beginning in FY 1996;

(iii) 30 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for one year period beginning in FY 1997 and continuing thereafter.

(2) *Numerical goals for other HUD programs covered by section 3.* (i) Recipients of section 3 covered housing assistance provided under other HUD programs, and their contractors and subcontractors (unless the contract or subcontract awards do not meet the threshold specified in §135.3(a)(3)) may demonstrate compliance with this part by committing to employ section 3 residents as 10 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for each year over the duration of the section 3 project;

(ii) Where a managing general partner or management agent is affiliated, in a given metropolitan area, with recipients of section 3 covered housing assistance, for an aggregate of 500 or more units in any fiscal year, the managing partner or management agent may demonstrate compliance with this part by committing to employ section 3 residents as:

(A) 10 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one year period beginning in FY 1995;

(B) 20 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one year period beginning in FY 1996;

(C) 30 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one year period beginning in FY 1997, and continuing thereafter.

(3) Recipients of section 3 covered community development assistance, and their contractors and subcontractors (unless the contract or subcontract awards do not meet the threshold specified in §135.3(a)(3)) may demonstrate compliance with the requirements of this part by committing to employ section 3 residents as:

(i) 10 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one year period beginning in FY 1995;

(ii) 20 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one year period beginning in FY 1996; and

(iii) 30 percent of the aggregate number of new hires for the one year period beginning in FY 1997 and continuing thereafter.

(c) *Contracts.* Numerical goals set forth in paragraph (c) of this section apply to contracts awarded in connection with all section 3 covered projects and section 3 covered activities. Each recipient and contractor and subcontractor (unless the contract or subcontract awards do not meet the threshold specified in §135.3(a)(3)) may demonstrate compliance with the requirements of this part by committing to award to section 3 business concerns:

(1) At least 10 percent of the total dollar amount of all section 3 covered contracts for building trades work for maintenance, repair, modernization or development of public or Indian housing, or for building



rades work arising in connection with housing rehabilitation, housing construction and other public construction; and

2) At least three (3) percent of the total dollar amount of all other section 3 covered contracts.

d) *Safe harbor and compliance determinations.* (1) In the absence of evidence to the contrary, a recipient that meets the minimum numerical goals set forth in this section will be considered to have complied with the section 3 preference requirements.

2) In evaluating compliance under subpart D of this part, a recipient that has not met the numerical goals set forth in this section has the burden of demonstrating why it was not feasible to meet the numerical goals set forth in this section. Such justification may include impediments encountered despite actions taken. A recipient or contractor also can indicate other economic opportunities, such as those listed in §135.40, which were provided in its efforts to comply with section 3 and the requirements of this part.

### **§ 135.32 Responsibilities of the recipient.**



[top](#)

Each recipient has the responsibility to comply with section 3 in its own operations, and ensure compliance in the operations of its contractors and subcontractors. This responsibility includes but may not be necessarily limited to:

a) Implementing procedures designed to notify section 3 residents about training and employment opportunities generated by section 3 covered assistance and section 3 business concerns about contracting opportunities generated by section 3 covered assistance;

b) Notifying potential contractors for section 3 covered projects of the requirements of this part, and incorporating the section 3 clause set forth in §135.38 in all solicitations and contracts.

c) Facilitating the training and employment of section 3 residents and the award of contracts to section 3 business concerns by undertaking activities such as described in the Appendix to this part, as appropriate, to reach the goals set forth in §135.30. Recipients, at their own discretion, may establish reasonable numerical goals for the training and employment of section 3 residents and contract award to section 3 business concerns that exceed those specified in §135.30;

d) Assisting and actively cooperating with the Assistant Secretary in obtaining the compliance of contractors and subcontractors with the requirements of this part, and refraining from entering into any contract with any contractor where the recipient has notice or knowledge that the contractor has been found in violation of the regulations in 24 CFR part 135.

e) Documenting actions taken to comply with the requirements of this part, the results of actions taken and impediments, if any.

f) A State or county which distributes funds for section 3 covered assistance to units of local governments, to the greatest extent feasible, must attempt to reach the numerical goals set forth in §135.30 regardless of the number of local governments receiving funds from the section 3 covered assistance which meet the thresholds for applicability set forth at 135.3. The State or county must inform units of local government to whom funds are distributed of the requirements of this part; assist local governments and their contractors in meeting the requirements and objectives of this part; and monitor the performance of local governments with respect to the objectives and requirements of this part.

### **§ 135.34 Preference for section 3 residents in training and employment opportunities.**



[top](#)

a) *Order of providing preference.* Recipients, contractors and subcontractors shall direct their efforts to provide, to the greatest extent feasible, training and employment opportunities generated from the



expenditure of section 3 covered assistance to section 3 residents in the order of priority provided in paragraph (a) of this section.

(1) *Public and Indian housing programs.* In public and Indian housing programs, efforts shall be directed to provide training and employment opportunities to section 3 residents in the following order of priority:

- (i) Residents of the housing development or developments for which the section 3 covered assistance is expended (category 1 residents);
- (ii) Residents of other housing developments managed by the HA that is expending the section 3 covered housing assistance (category 2 residents);
- (iii) Participants in HUD Youthbuild programs being carried out in the metropolitan area (or nonmetropolitan county) in which the section 3 covered assistance is expended (category 3 residents);
- (iv) Other section 3 residents.

(2) *Housing and community development programs.* In housing and community development programs, priority consideration shall be given, where feasible, to:

- (i) Section 3 residents residing in the service area or neighborhood in which the section 3 covered project is located (collectively, referred to as category 1 residents); and
- (ii) Participants in HUD Youthbuild programs (category 2 residents).
- (iii) Where the section 3 project is assisted under the Stewart B. McKinney Homeless Assistance Act (42 U.S.C. 11301 *et seq.* ), homeless persons residing in the service area or neighborhood in which the section 3 covered project is located shall be given the highest priority;
- (iv) Other section 3 residents.

(3) Recipients of housing assistance programs administered by the Assistant Secretary for Housing may, at their own discretion, provide preference to residents of the housing development receiving the section 3 covered assistance within the service area or neighborhood where the section 3 covered project is located.

(4) Recipients of community development programs may, at their own discretion, provide priority to recipients of government assistance for housing, including recipients of certificates or vouchers under the Section 8 housing assistance program, within the service area or neighborhood where the section 3 covered project is located.

(b) *Eligibility for preference.* A section 3 resident seeking the preference in training and employment provided by this part shall certify, or submit evidence to the recipient contractor or subcontractor, if requested, that the person is a section 3 resident, as defined in §135.5. (An example of evidence of eligibility for the preference is evidence of receipt of public assistance, or evidence of participation in a public assistance program.)

(c) *Eligibility for employment.* Nothing in this part shall be construed to require the employment of a section 3 resident who does not meet the qualifications of the position to be filled.

#### **§ 135.36 Preference for section 3 business concerns in contracting opportunities.**



[top](#)

(a) *Order of providing preference.* Recipients, contractors and subcontractors shall direct their efforts to award section 3 covered contracts, to the greatest extent feasible, to section 3 business concerns in the order of priority provided in paragraph (a) of this section.

1) *Public and Indian housing programs.* In public and Indian housing programs, efforts shall be directed



o award contracts to section 3 business concerns in the following order of priority:

- i) Business concerns that are 51 percent or more owned by residents of the housing development or developments for which the section 3 covered assistance is expended, or whose full-time, permanent workforce includes 30 percent of these persons as employees (category 1 businesses);
- ii) Business concerns that are 51 percent or more owned by residents of other housing developments or developments managed by the HA that is expending the section 3 covered assistance, or whose full-time, permanent workforce includes 30 percent of these persons as employees (category 2 businesses); or
- iii) HUD Youthbuild programs being carried out in the metropolitan area (or nonmetropolitan county) in which the section 3 covered assistance is expended (category 3 businesses).
- iv) Business concerns that are 51 percent or more owned by section 3 residents, or whose permanent, full-time workforce includes no less than 30 percent section 3 residents (category 4 businesses), or that subcontract in excess of 25 percent of the total amount of subcontracts to business concerns identified in paragraphs (a)(1)(i) and (a)(1)(ii) of this section.

2) *Housing and community development programs.* In housing and community development programs, priority consideration shall be given, where feasible, to:

- i) Section 3 business concerns that provide economic opportunities for section 3 residents in the service area or neighborhood in which the section 3 covered project is located (category 1 businesses); and
- ii) Applicants (as this term is defined in 42 U.S.C. 12899) selected to carry out HUD Youthbuild programs (category 2 businesses);
- iii) Other section 3 business concerns.

b) *Eligibility for preference.* A business concern seeking to qualify for a section 3 contracting preference shall certify or submit evidence, if requested, that the business concern is a section 3 business concern as defined in §135.5.

c) *Ability to complete contract.* A section 3 business concern seeking a contract or a subcontract shall submit evidence to the recipient, contractor, or subcontractor (as applicable), if requested, sufficient to demonstrate to the satisfaction of the party awarding the contract that the business concern is responsible and has the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the proposed contract. (The ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of the proposed contract is required of all contractors and subcontractors subject to the procurement standards of 24 CFR 85.36 (see 24 CFR 85.36(b)(8)).) This regulation requires consideration of, among other factors, the potential contractor's record in complying with public policy requirements. Section 3 compliance is a matter properly considered as part of this determination.

#### § 135.38 Section 3 clause.



[top](#)

All section 3 covered contracts shall include the following clause (referred to as the section 3 clause):

A. The work to be performed under this contract is subject to the requirements of section 3 of the Housing and Urban Development Act of 1968, as amended, 12 U.S.C. 1701u (section 3). The purpose of section 3 is to ensure that employment and other economic opportunities generated by HUD assistance or HUD-assisted projects covered by section 3, shall, to the greatest extent feasible, be directed to low- and very low-income persons; particularly persons who are recipients of HUD assistance for housing.

B. The parties to this contract agree to comply with HUD's regulations in 24 CFR part 135, which implement section 3. As evidenced by their execution of this contract, the parties to this contract certify that they are under no contractual or other impediment that would prevent them from complying with the



part 135 regulations.

C. The contractor agrees to send to each labor organization or representative of workers with which the contractor has a collective bargaining agreement or other understanding, if any, a notice advising the labor organization or workers' representative of the contractor's commitments under this section 3 clause, and will post copies of the notice in conspicuous places at the work site where both employees and applicants for training and employment positions can see the notice. The notice shall describe the section 3 preference, shall set forth minimum number and job titles subject to hire, availability of apprenticeship and training positions, the qualifications for each; and the name and location of the person(s) taking applications for each of the positions; and the anticipated date the work shall begin.

D. The contractor agrees to include this section 3 clause in every subcontract subject to compliance with regulations in 24 CFR part 135, and agrees to take appropriate action, as provided in an applicable provision of the subcontract or in this section 3 clause, upon a finding that the subcontractor is in violation of the regulations in 24 CFR part 135. The contractor will not subcontract with any subcontractor where the contractor has notice or knowledge that the subcontractor has been found in violation of the regulations in 24 CFR part 135.

E. The contractor will certify that any vacant employment positions, including training positions, that are filled (1) after the contractor is selected but before the contract is executed, and (2) with persons other than those to whom the regulations of 24 CFR part 135 require employment opportunities to be directed, were not filled to circumvent the contractor's obligations under 24 CFR part 135.

F. Noncompliance with HUD's regulations in 24 CFR part 135 may result in sanctions, termination of this contract for default, and debarment or suspension from future HUD assisted contracts.

G. With respect to work performed in connection with section 3 covered Indian housing assistance, section 7(b) of the Indian Self-Determination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 450e) also applies to the work to be performed under this contract. Section 7(b) requires that to the greatest extent feasible (i) preference and opportunities for training and employment shall be given to Indians, and (ii) preference in the award of contracts and subcontracts shall be given to Indian organizations and Indian-owned Economic Enterprises. Parties to this contract that are subject to the provisions of section 3 and section 7(b) agree to comply with section 3 to the maximum extent feasible, but not in derogation of compliance with section 7(b).

#### § 135.40 Providing other economic opportunities.



[top](#)

(a) *General.* In accordance with the findings of the Congress, as stated in section 3, that other economic opportunities offer an effective means of empowering low-income persons, a recipient is encouraged to undertake efforts to provide to low-income persons economic opportunities other than training, employment, and contract awards, in connection with section 3 covered assistance.

(b) *Other training and employment related opportunities.* Other economic opportunities to train and employ section 3 residents include, but need not be limited to, use of "upward mobility", "bridge" and trainee positions to fill vacancies; hiring section 3 residents in management and maintenance positions within other housing developments; and hiring section 3 residents in part-time positions.

(c) *Other business related economic opportunities.* (I) A recipient or contractor may provide economic opportunities to establish, stabilize or expand section 3 business concerns, including micro-enterprises. Such opportunities include, but are not limited to the formation of section 3 joint ventures, financial support for affiliating with franchise development, use of labor only contracts for building trades, purchase of supplies and materials from housing authority resident-owned businesses, purchase of materials and supplies from PHA resident-owned businesses and use of procedures under 24 CFR part 963 regarding HA contracts to HA resident-owned businesses. A recipient or contractor may employ these methods directly or may provide incentives to non-section 3 businesses to utilize such methods to provide other economic opportunities to low-income persons.

(II) *section 3 joint venture* means an association of business concerns, one of which qualifies as a section 3 business concern, formed by written joint venture agreement to engage in and carry out a



specific business venture for which purpose the business concerns combine their efforts, resources, and skills for joint profit, but not necessarily on a continuing or permanent basis for conducting business generally, and for which the section 3 business concern:

- i) Is responsible for a clearly defined portion of the work to be performed and holds management responsibilities in the joint venture; and
- ii) Performs at least 25 percent of the work and is contractually entitled to compensation proportionate to its work.

#### Subpart C [Reserved]



[top](#)

#### Subpart D—Complaint and Compliance Review



[top](#)

#### § 135.70 General.



[top](#)

a) *Purpose.* The purpose of this subpart is to establish the procedures for handling complaints alleging noncompliance with the regulations of this part, and the procedures governing the Assistant Secretary's review of a recipient's or contractor's compliance with the regulations in this part.

b) *Definitions.* For purposes of this subpart:

1) *Complaint* means an allegation of noncompliance with regulations of this part made in the form described in §135.76(d).

2) *Complainant* means the party which files a complaint with the Assistant Secretary alleging that a recipient or contractor has failed or refused to comply with the regulations in this part.

3) *Noncompliance with section 3* means failure by a recipient or contractor to comply with the requirements of this part.

4) *Respondent* means the recipient or contractor against which a complaint of noncompliance has been filed. The term "recipient" shall have the meaning set forth in §135.7, which includes PHA and IHA.

#### § 135.72 Cooperation in achieving compliance.



[top](#)

a) The Assistant Secretary recognizes that the success of ensuring that section 3 residents and section 3 business concerns have the opportunity to apply for jobs and to bid for contracts generated by covered HUD financial assistance depends upon the cooperation and assistance of HUD recipients and their contractors and subcontractors. All recipients shall cooperate fully and promptly with the Assistant Secretary in section 3 compliance reviews, in investigations of allegations of noncompliance made under § 135.76, and with the distribution and collection of data and information that the Assistant Secretary may require in connection with achieving the economic objectives of section 3.

b) The recipient shall refrain from entering into a contract with any contractor after notification to the recipient by HUD that the contractor has been found in violation of the regulations in this part. The provisions of 2 CFR part 2424 apply to the employment, engagement of services, awarding of contracts, or funding of any contractors or subcontractors during any period of debarment, suspension, or otherwise ineligible status.



[59 FR 33880, June 30, 1994, as amended at 72 FR 73493, Dec. 27, 2007]

#### § 74 Section 3 compliance review procedures.



(a) *Compliance reviews by Assistant Secretary.* The Assistant Secretary shall periodically conduct section 3 compliance reviews of selected recipients and contractors to determine whether these recipients are in compliance with the regulations in this part.

(b) *Form of compliance review.* A section 3 compliance review shall consist of a comprehensive analysis and evaluation of the recipient's or contractor's compliance with the requirements and obligations imposed by the regulations of this part, including an analysis of the extent to which section 3 residents have been hired and section 3 business concerns have been awarded contracts as a result of the methods undertaken by the recipient to achieve the employment, contracting and other economic objectives of section 3.

(c) *Where compliance review reveals noncompliance with section 3 by recipient or contractor.* Where the section 3 compliance review reveals that a recipient or contractor has not complied with section 3, the Assistant Secretary shall notify the recipient or contractor of its specific deficiencies in compliance with the regulations of this part, and shall advise the recipient or contractor of the means by which these deficiencies may be corrected. HUD shall conduct a follow-up review with the recipient or contractor to ensure that action is being taken to correct the deficiencies.

(d) *Continuing noncompliance by recipient or contractor.* A continuing failure or refusal by the recipient or contractor to comply with the regulations in this part may result in the application of sanctions specified in the contract through which HUD assistance is provided, or the application of sanctions specified in the regulations governing the HUD program under which HUD financial assistance is provided. HUD will notify the recipient of any continuing failure or refusal by the contractor to comply with the regulations in this part for possible action under any procurement contract between the recipient and the contractor. Where appropriate, debarment, suspension, and limited denial of participation may be applied to the recipient or the contractor, pursuant to HUD's regulations at 2 CFR part 2424.

(e) *Conducting compliance review before the award of assistance.* Section 3 compliance reviews may be conducted before the award of contracts, and especially where the Assistant Secretary has reasonable grounds to believe that the recipient or contractor will be unable or unwilling to comply with the regulations in this part.

(f) *Consideration of complaints during compliance review.* Complaints alleging noncompliance with section 3, as provided in §135.76, may also be considered during any compliance review conducted to determine the recipient's conformance with regulations in this part.

[59 FR 33880, June 30, 1994, as amended at 72 FR 73493, Dec. 27, 2007]

#### § 135.76 Filing and processing complaints.



(a) *Who may file a complaint.* The following individuals and business concerns may, personally or through an authorized representative, file with the Assistant Secretary a complaint alleging noncompliance with section 3:

(1) Any section 3 resident on behalf of himself or herself, or as a representative of persons similarly situated, seeking employment, training or other economic opportunities generated from the expenditure of section 3 covered assistance with a recipient or contractor, or by a representative who is not a section 3 resident but who represents one or more section 3 residents;

(2) Any section 3 business concern on behalf of itself, or as a representative of other section 3 business concerns similarly situated, seeking contract opportunities generated from the expenditure of section 3 covered assistance from a recipient or contractor, or by an individual representative of section 3



business concerns.

c) *Where to file a complaint.* A complaint must be filed with the Assistant Secretary for Fair Housing and Equal Opportunity, Department of Housing and Urban Development, Washington, DC, 20410.

c) *Time of filing.* (1) A complaint must be received not later than 180 days from the date of the action or omission upon which the complaint is based, unless the time for filing is extended by the Assistant Secretary for good cause shown.

2) Where a complaint alleges noncompliance with section 3 and the regulations of this part that is continuing, as manifested in a number of incidents of noncompliance, the complaint will be timely if filed within 180 days of the last alleged occurrence of noncompliance.

3) Where a complaint contains incomplete information, the Assistant Secretary shall request the needed information from the complainant. In the event this information is not furnished to the Assistant Secretary within sixty (60) days of the date of the request, the complaint may be closed.

d) *Contents of complaint* —(1) *Written complaints.* Each complaint must be in writing, signed by the complainant, and include:

i) The complainant's name and address;

ii) The name and address of the respondent;

iii) A description of the acts or omissions by the respondent that is sufficient to inform the Assistant Secretary of the nature and date of the alleged noncompliance.

v) A complainant may provide information to be contained in a complaint by telephone to HUD or any HUD Field Office, and HUD will reduce the information provided by telephone to writing on the prescribed complaint form and send the form to the complainant for signature.

2) *Amendment of complaint.* Complaints may be reasonably and fairly amended at any time. Such amendments may include, but are not limited to, amendments to cure technical defects or omissions, including failure to sign or affirm a complaint, to clarify or amplify the allegations in a complaint, or to join additional or substitute respondents. Except for the purposes of notifying respondents, amended complaints will be considered as having been made as of the original filing date.

a) *Resolution of complaint by recipient.* (1) Within ten (10) days of timely filing of a complaint that contains complete information (in accordance with paragraphs (c) and (d) of this section), the Assistant Secretary shall determine whether the complainant alleges an action or omission by a recipient or the recipient's contractor that if proven qualifies as noncompliance with section 3. If a determination is made that there is an allegation of noncompliance with section 3, the complaint shall be sent to the recipient for resolution.

2) If the recipient believes that the complaint lacks merit, the recipient must notify the Assistant Secretary in writing of this recommendation with supporting reasons, within 30 days of the date of receipt of the complaint. The determination that a complaint lacks merit is reserved to the Assistant Secretary.

3) If the recipient determines that there is merit to the complaint, the recipient will have sixty (60) days from the date of receipt of the complaint to resolve the matter with the complainant. At the expiration of the 60-day period, the recipient must notify the Assistant Secretary in writing whether a resolution of the complaint has been reached. If resolution has been reached, the notification must be signed by both the recipient and the complainant, and must summarize the terms of the resolution reached between the two parties.

4) Any request for an extension of the 60-day period by the recipient must be submitted in writing to the Assistant Secretary, and must include a statement explaining the need for the extension.

5) If the recipient is unable to resolve the complaint within the 60-day period (or more if extended by the Assistant Secretary), the complaint shall be referred to the Assistant Secretary for handling.



(f) *Informal resolution of complaint by Assistant Secretary —(1) Dismissal of complaint.* Upon receipt of the recipient's written recommendation that there is no merit to the complaint, or upon failure of the recipient and complainant to reach resolution, the Assistant Secretary shall review the complaint to determine whether it presents a valid allegation of noncompliance with section 3. The Assistant Secretary may conduct further investigation if deemed necessary. Where the complaint fails to present a valid allegation of noncompliance with section 3, the Assistant Secretary will dismiss the complaint without further action. The Assistant Secretary shall notify the complainant of the dismissal of the complaint and the reasons for the dismissal.

(2) *Informal resolution.* Where the allegations in a complaint on their face, or as amplified by the statements of the complainant, present a valid allegation of noncompliance with section 3, the Assistant Secretary will attempt, through informal methods, to obtain a voluntary and just resolution of the complaint. Where attempts to resolve the complaint informally fail, the Assistant Secretary will impose a resolution on the recipient and complainant. Any resolution imposed by the Assistant Secretary will be in accordance with requirements and procedures concerning the imposition of sanctions or resolutions as set forth in the regulations governing the HUD program under which the section 3 covered assistance was provided.

(3) *Effective date of informal resolution.* The imposed resolution will become effective and binding at the expiration of 15 days following notification to recipient and complainant by certified mail of the imposed resolution, unless either party appeals the resolution before the expiration of the 15 days. Any appeal shall be in writing to the Secretary and shall include the basis for the appeal.

(g) *Sanctions.* Sanctions that may be imposed on recipients that fail to comply with the regulations of this part include debarment, suspension and limited denial of participation in HUD programs.

(h) *Investigation of complaint.* The Assistant Secretary reserves the right to investigate a complaint directly when, in the Assistant Secretary's discretion, the investigation would further the purposes of section 3 and this part.

(i) *Intimidatory or retaliatory acts prohibited.* No recipient or other person shall intimidate, threaten, coerce, or discriminate against any person or business because the person or business has made a complaint, testified, assisted or participated in any manner in an investigation, proceeding, or hearing under this part. The identity of complainants shall be kept confidential except to the extent necessary to carry out the purposes of this part, including the conduct of any investigation, hearing or judicial proceeding arising thereunder.

(j) *Judicial relief.* Nothing in this subpart D precludes a section 3 resident or section 3 business concerning from exercising the right, which may otherwise be available, to seek redress directly through judicial procedures.

(Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 2529-0043)

## Subpart E—Reporting and Recordkeeping



[top](#)

### § 135.90 Reporting.



[top](#)

Each recipient which receives directly from HUD financial assistance that is subject to the requirements of this part shall submit to the Assistant Secretary an annual report in such form and with such information as the Assistant Secretary may request, for the purpose of determining the effectiveness of section 3. Where the program providing the section 3 covered assistance requires submission of an annual performance report, the section 3 report will be submitted with that annual performance report. If the program providing the section 3 covered assistance does not require an annual performance report, the section 3 report is to be submitted by January 10 of each year or within 10 days of project completion, whichever is earlier. All reports submitted to HUD in accordance with the requirements of this part will be made available to the public.



Approved by the Office of Management and Budget under control number 2529-0043)

### **§ 135.92 Recordkeeping and access to records.**



[top](#)

HUD shall have access to all records, reports, and other documents or items of the recipient that are maintained to demonstrate compliance with the requirements of this part, or that are maintained in accordance with the regulations governing the specific HUD program under which section 3 covered assistance is provided or otherwise made available to the recipient or contractor.

### **Appendix to Part 135**



[top](#)

#### *Examples of Efforts To Offer Training and Employment Opportunities to Section 3 Residents*

- 1) Entering into "first source" hiring agreements with organizations representing Section 3 residents.
- 2) Sponsoring a HUD-certified "Step-Up" employment and training program for section 3 residents.
- 3) Establishing training programs, which are consistent with the requirements of the Department of Labor, for public and Indian housing residents and other section 3 residents in the building trades.
- 4) Advertising the training and employment positions by distributing flyers (which identify the positions to be filled, the qualifications required, and where to obtain additional information about the application process) to every occupied dwelling unit in the housing development or developments where category 1 or category 2 persons (as these terms are defined in §135.34) reside.
- 5) Advertising the training and employment positions by posting flyers (which identify the positions to be filled, the qualifications required, and where to obtain additional information about the application process) in the common areas or other prominent areas of the housing development or developments. For HAs, post such advertising in the housing development or developments where category 1 or category 2 persons reside; for all other recipients, post such advertising in the housing development or developments and transitional housing in the neighborhood or service area of the section 3 covered project.
- 6) Contacting resident councils, resident management corporations, or other resident organizations, where they exist, in the housing development or developments where category 1 or category 2 persons reside, and community organizations in HUD-assisted neighborhoods, to request the assistance of these organizations in notifying residents of the training and employment positions to be filled.
- 7) Sponsoring (scheduling, advertising, financing or providing in-kind services) a job informational meeting to be conducted by an HA or contractor representative or representatives at a location in the housing development or developments where category 1 or category 2 persons reside or in the neighborhood or service area of the section 3 covered project.
- 8) Arranging assistance in conducting job interviews and completing job applications for residents of the housing development or developments where category 1 or category 2 persons reside and in the neighborhood or service area in which a section 3 project is located.
- 9) Arranging for a location in the housing development or developments where category 1 persons reside, or the neighborhood or service area of the project, where job applications may be delivered to and collected by a recipient or contractor representative or representatives.
- 10) Conducting job interviews at the housing development or developments where category 1 or category 2 persons reside, or at a location within the neighborhood or service area of the section 3 covered project.



(11) Contacting agencies administering HUD Youthbuild programs, and requesting their assistance in recruiting HUD Youthbuild program participants for the HA's or contractor's training and employment positions.

(12) Consulting with State and local agencies administering training programs funded through JTPA or JOBS, probation and parole agencies, unemployment compensation programs, community organizations and other officials or organizations to assist with recruiting Section 3 residents for the HA's or contractor's training and employment positions.

(13) Advertising the jobs to be filled through the local media, such as community television networks, newspapers of general circulation, and radio advertising.

(14) Employing a job coordinator, or contracting with a business concern that is licensed in the field of job placement (preferably one of the section 3 business concerns identified in part 135), that will undertake, on behalf of the HA, other recipient or contractor, the efforts to match eligible and qualified section 3 residents with the training and employment positions that the HA or contractor intends to fill.

(15) For an HA, employing section 3 residents directly on either a permanent or a temporary basis to perform work generated by section 3 assistance. (This type of employment is referred to as "force account labor" in HUD's Indian housing regulations. See 24 CFR 905.102, and §905.201(a)(6).)

(16) Where there are more qualified section 3 residents than there are positions to be filled, maintaining a file of eligible qualified section 3 residents for future employment positions.

(17) Undertaking job counseling, education and related programs in association with local educational institutions.

(18) Undertaking such continued job training efforts as may be necessary to ensure the continued employment of section 3 residents previously hired for employment opportunities.

(19) After selection of bidders but prior to execution of contracts, incorporating into the contract a related provision for a specific number of public housing or other section 3 residents to be trained or employed on the section 3 covered assistance.

(20) Coordinating plans and implementation of economic development (e.g., job training and preparation, business development assistance for residents) with the planning for housing and community development.

## *II. Examples of Efforts To Award Contracts to Section 3 Business Concerns*

(1) Utilizing procurement procedures for section 3 business concerns similar to those provided in 24 CFR part 905 for business concerns owned by Native Americans (see section III of this Appendix).

(2) In determining the responsibility of potential contractors, consider their record of section 3 compliance as evidenced by past actions and their current plans for the pending contract.

(3) Contacting business assistance agencies, minority contractors associations and community organizations to inform them of contracting opportunities and requesting their assistance in identifying section 3 businesses which may solicit bids or proposals for contracts for work in connection with section 3 covered assistance.

(4) Advertising contracting opportunities by posting notices, which provide general information about the work to be contracted and where to obtain additional information, in the common areas or other prominent areas of the housing development or developments owned and managed by the HA.

(5) For HAs, contacting resident councils, resident management corporations, or other resident organizations, where they exist, and requesting their assistance in identifying category 1 and category 2 business concerns.

(6) Providing written notice to all known section 3 business concerns of the contracting opportunities.



his notice should be in sufficient time to allow the section 3 business concerns to respond to the bid invitations or request for proposals.

7) Following up with section 3 business concerns that have expressed interest in the contracting opportunities by contacting them to provide additional information on the contracting opportunities.

8) Coordinating pre-bid meetings at which section 3 business concerns could be informed of upcoming contracting and subcontracting opportunities.

9) Carrying out workshops on contracting procedures and specific contract opportunities in a timely manner so that section 3 business concerns can take advantage of upcoming contracting opportunities, with such information being made available in languages other than English where appropriate.

10) Advising section 3 business concerns as to where they may seek assistance to overcome limitations such as inability to obtain bonding, lines of credit, financing, or insurance.

11) Arranging solicitations, times for the presentation of bids, quantities, specifications, and delivery schedules in ways to facilitate the participation of section 3 business concerns.

12) Where appropriate, breaking out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate participation by section 3 business concerns.

13) Contacting agencies administering HUD Youthbuild programs, and notifying these agencies of the contracting opportunities.

14) Advertising the contracting opportunities through trade association papers and newsletters, and through the local media, such as community television networks, newspapers of general circulation, and radio advertising.

15) Developing a list of eligible section 3 business concerns.

16) For HAs, participating in the "Contracting with Resident-Owned Businesses" program provided under 24 CFR part 963.

17) Establishing or sponsoring programs designed to assist residents of public or Indian housing in the creation and development of resident-owned businesses.

18) Establishing numerical goals (number of awards and dollar amount of contracts) for award of contracts to section 3 business concerns.

19) Supporting businesses which provide economic opportunities to low income persons by linking them to the support services available through the Small Business Administration (SBA), the Department of Commerce and comparable agencies at the State and local levels.

20) Encouraging financial institutions, in carrying out their responsibilities under the Community reinvestment Act, to provide no or low interest loans for providing working capital and other financial business needs.

21) Actively supporting joint ventures with section 3 business concerns.

22) Actively supporting the development or maintenance of business incubators which assist Section 3 business concerns.

#### *Examples of Procurement Procedures That Provide for Preference for Section 3 Business Concerns*

This Section III provides specific procedures that may be followed by recipients and contractors collectively, referred to as the "contracting party") for implementing the section 3 contracting preference for each of the competitive procurement methods authorized in 24 CFR 85.36(d).



(1) *Small Purchase Procedures.* For section 3 covered contracts aggregating no more than \$25,000, the methods set forth in this paragraph (1) or the more formal procedures set forth in paragraphs (2) and (3) of this Section III may be utilized.

(i) *Solicitation.* (A) Quotations may be solicited by telephone, letter or other informal procedure provided that the manner of solicitation provides for participation by a reasonable number of competitive sources. At the time of solicitation, the parties must be informed of:

—the section 3 covered contract to be awarded with sufficient specificity;

—the time within which quotations must be submitted; and

—the information that must be submitted with each quotation.

(B) If the method described in paragraph (i)(A) is utilized, there must be an attempt to obtain quotations from a minimum of three qualified sources in order to promote competition. Fewer than three quotations are acceptable when the contracting party has attempted, but has been unable, to obtain a sufficient number of competitive quotations. In unusual circumstances, the contracting party may accept the sole quotation received in response to a solicitation provided the price is reasonable. In all cases, the contracting party shall document the circumstances when it has been unable to obtain at least three quotations.

(ii) *Award.* (A) Where the section 3 covered contract is to be awarded based upon the lowest price, the contract shall be awarded to the qualified section 3 business concern with the lowest responsive quotation, if it is reasonable and no more than 10 percent higher than the quotation of the lowest responsive quotation from any qualified source. If no responsive quotation by a qualified section 3 business concern is within 10 percent of the lowest responsive quotation from any qualified source, the award shall be made to the source with the lowest quotation.

(B) Where the section 3 covered contract is to be awarded based on factors other than price, a request for quotations shall be issued by developing the particulars of the solicitation, including a rating system for assignment of points to evaluate the merits of each quotation. The solicitation shall identify all factors to be considered, including price or cost. The rating system shall provide for a range of 15 to 25 percent of the total number of available rating points to be set aside for the provision of preference for section 3 business concerns. The purchase order shall be awarded to the responsible firm whose quotation is the most advantageous, considering price and all other factors specified in the rating system.

(2) *Procurement by sealed bids (Invitations for Bids).* Preference in the award of section 3 covered contracts that are awarded under a sealed bid (IFB) process may be provided as follows:

(i) Bids shall be solicited from all businesses (section 3 business concerns, and non-section 3 business concerns). An award shall be made to the qualified section 3 business concern with the highest priority ranking and with the lowest responsive bid if that bid—

(A) is within the maximum total contract price established in the contracting party's budget for the specific project for which bids are being taken, and

(B) is not more than "X" higher than the total bid price of the lowest responsive bid from any responsible bidder. "X" is determined as follows:

	x=lesser of:
When the lowest responsive bid is less than \$100,000	10% of that bid or \$9,000.
When the lowest responsive bid is:	
At least \$100,000, but less than \$200,000	9% of that bid, or \$16,000.
At least \$200,000, but less than \$300,000	8% of that bid, or \$21,000.



At least \$300,000, but less than \$400,000	7% of that bid, or \$24,000.
At least \$400,000, but less than \$500,000	6% of that bid, or \$25,000.
At least \$500,000, but less than \$1 million	5% of that bid, or \$40,000.
At least \$1 million, but less than \$2 million	4% of that bid, or \$60,000.
At least \$2 million, but less than \$4 million	3% of that bid, or \$80,000.
At least \$4 million, but less than \$7 million	2% of that bid, or \$105,000.
\$7 million or more	1 1/2% of the lowest responsive bid, with no dollar limit.

i) If no responsive bid by a section 3 business concern meets the requirements of paragraph (2)(i) of this section, the contract shall be awarded to a responsible bidder with the lowest responsive bid.

3) *Procurement under the competitive proposals method of procurement (Request for Proposals RFP).* (i) For contracts and subcontracts awarded under the competitive proposals method of procurement (24 CFR 85.36(d)(3)), a Request for Proposals (RFP) shall identify all evaluation factors and their relative importance) to be used to rate proposals.

i) One of the evaluation factors shall address both the preference for section 3 business concerns and the acceptability of the strategy for meeting the greatest extent feasible requirement (section 3 strategy), as disclosed in proposals submitted by all business concerns (section 3 and non-section 3 business concerns). This factor shall provide for a range of 15 to 25 percent of the total number of available points to be set aside for the evaluation of these two components.

ii) The component of this evaluation factor designed to address the preference for section 3 business concerns must establish a preference for these business concerns in the order of priority ranking as prescribed in 24 CFR 135.36.

v) With respect to the second component (the acceptability of the section 3 strategy), the RFP shall require the disclosure of the contractor's section 3 strategy to comply with the section 3 training and employment preference, or contracting preference, or both, if applicable. A determination of the contractor's responsibility will include the submission of an acceptable section 3 strategy. The contract award shall be made to the responsible firm (either section 3 or non-section 3 business concern) whose proposal is determined most advantageous, considering price and all other factors specified in the RFP.

[Browse Next](#)

For questions or comments regarding e-CFR editorial content, features, or design, email [ecfr@nara.gov](mailto:ecfr@nara.gov).

For questions concerning e-CFR programming and delivery issues, email [webteam@gpo.gov](mailto:webteam@gpo.gov).

[Section 508 / Accessibility](#)



## **Item: XII**

### **Georgia Immigration and Security Related Laws**

**-- O.C.G.A. 13-10-90**

**-- O.C.G.A. 50-36-1**

**-- H.B. 87**

**See web page for copy**

**[http://www1.legis.ga.gov/legis/2011\\_12/sum/hb87.htm](http://www1.legis.ga.gov/legis/2011_12/sum/hb87.htm)**







*O.C.G.A. § 13-10-90*

GEORGIA CODE  
Copyright 2011 by The State of Georgia  
All rights reserved.

\*\*\* Current Through the 2010 Regular Session \*\*\*  
\*\*\* Annotations Current Through October 29, 2010 \*\*\*

TITLE 13. CONTRACTS  
CHAPTER 10. CONTRACTS FOR PUBLIC WORKS  
ARTICLE 3. SECURITY AND IMMIGRATION COMPLIANCE

*O.C.G.A. § 13-10-90 (2011)***§ 13-10-90.** Definitions

As used in this article, the term:

(1) "Commissioner" means the Commissioner of the Georgia Department of Labor.

(2) "Federal work authorization program" means any of the electronic verification of work authorization programs operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security or any equivalent federal work authorization program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security to verify information of newly hired employees, pursuant to the Immigration Reform and Control Act of 1986 (IRCA), D.L. 99-603.

(2.1) "Physical performance of services" means the building, altering, repairing, improving, or demolishing of any public structure or building or other public improvements of any kind to public real property, including the construction, reconstruction, or maintenance of all or part of a public road; or any other performance of labor for a public employer under a contract or other bidding process.

(3) "Public employer" means every department, agency, or instrumentality of the state or a political subdivision of the state.

(4) "Subcontractor" includes a subcontractor, contract employee, staffing agency, or any contractor regardless of its tier.

**HISTORY:** Code 1981, § 13-10-90, enacted by Ga. L. 2006, p. 105, § 2/SB 529; Ga. L. 2010, p. 308, § 2/SB 447.

in

About LexisNexis | Privacy Policy | Terms & Conditions | Contact Us  
Copyright © 2011 LexisNexis, a division of Reed Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.



O.C.G.A. § 13-10-91

GEORGIA CODE  
Copyright 2011 by The State of Georgia  
All rights reserved.

\*\*\* Current Through the 2010 Regular Session \*\*\*  
\*\*\* Annotations Current Through October 29, 2010 \*\*\*

TITLE 13. CONTRACTS  
CHAPTER 10. CONTRACTS FOR PUBLIC WORKS  
ARTICLE 3. SECURITY AND IMMIGRATION COMPLIANCE

O.C.G.A. § 13-10-91 (2011)

§ 13-10-91. Verification of new employee eligibility; applicability; rules and regulations

(a) Every public employer, including, but not limited to, every municipality and county, shall register and participate in the federal work authorization program to verify employment eligibility of all newly hired employees. Upon federal authorization, a public employer shall permanently post the employer's federally issued user identification number and date of authorization, as established by the agreement for authorization, on the employer's website; provided, however, that if a local public employer does not maintain a website, the identification number and date of authorization shall be published annually in the official legal organ for the county. State departments, agencies, or instrumentalities may satisfy the requirement of this Code section by posting information required by this Code section on one website maintained and operated by the state.

(b) (1) No public employer shall enter into a contract pursuant to this chapter for the physical performance of services within this state unless the contractor registers and participates in the federal work authorization program to verify information of all newly hired employees or subcontractors. Before a bid for any such service is considered by a public employer, the bid shall include a signed, notarized affidavit from the contractor attesting to the following:

(A) The affiant has registered with and is authorized to use the federal work authorization program;

(B) The user identification number and date of authorization for the affiant; and

(C) The affiant is using and will continue to use the federal work authorization program throughout the contract period.

An affidavit required by this subsection shall be considered an open public record once a public employer has entered into a contract for physical performance of services; provided, however, that any information protected from public disclosure by federal law or by Article 4 of Chapter 18 of Title 50 shall be redacted. Affidavits shall be maintained by the public employer for five years from the date of receipt.

(2) No contractor or subcontractor who enters a contract pursuant to this chapter with a public employer or a contractor of a public employer shall enter into such a contract or subcontract in connection with the physical performance of services within this state unless the contractor or subcontractor registers and participates in the federal work authorization program to verify information of all newly hired employees. Any employee, contractor, or subcontractor of such contractor or subcontractor shall also be required to satisfy the requirements of this paragraph.



(3) Upon contracting with a new subcontractor, a contractor or subcontractor shall, as a condition of any contract or subcontract entered into pursuant to this chapter, provide a public employer with notice of the identity of any and all subsequent subcontractors hired or contracted by that contractor or subcontractor. Such notice shall be provided within five business days of entering into a contract or agreement for hire with any subcontractor. Such notice shall include an affidavit from each subsequent contractor attesting to the subcontractor's name, address, user identification number, and date of authorization to use the federal work authorization program.

(4) Contingent upon appropriation or approval of necessary funding and in order to verify compliance with the provisions of this subsection, each year the Commissioner shall conduct no fewer than 100 random audits of public employers and contractors. The results of the audits shall be published on the [www.open.georgia.gov](http://www.open.georgia.gov) website and on the Georgia Department of Labor's website no later than December 31 of each year. The Georgia Department of Labor shall seek funding from the United States Secretary of Labor to the extent such funding is available.

(5) Any person who knowingly and willfully makes a false, fictitious, or fraudulent statement in an affidavit submitted pursuant to this subsection shall be guilty of a violation of Code Section 16-10-20 and, upon conviction, shall be punished as provided in such Code section. Contractors and subcontractors convicted for false statements based on a violation of this subsection shall be prohibited from bidding on or entering into any public contract for 12 months following such conviction.

(c) This Code section shall be enforced without regard to race, religion, gender, ethnicity, or national origin.

(d) Except as provided in subsection (e) of this Code section, the Commissioner shall prescribe forms and promulgate rules and regulations deemed necessary in order to administer and effectuate this Code section and publish such rules and regulations on the Georgia Department of Labor's website.

(e) The commissioner of the Georgia Department of Transportation shall prescribe all forms and promulgate rules and regulations deemed necessary for the application of this Code section to any contract or agreement relating to public transportation and shall publish such rules and regulations on the Georgia Department of Transportation's website.

(f) No employer or agency or political subdivision, as such term is defined in Code Section 50-36-1, shall be subject to lawsuit or liability arising from any act to comply with the requirements of this Code section.

**HISTORY:** Code 1981, § **13-10-91**, enacted by Ga. L. 2006, p. 105, § 2/SB 529; Ga. L. 2009, p. 970, § 1/HB 2; Ga. L. 2010, p. 308, § 2.A/SB 447.

In

About LexisNexis | Privacy Policy | Terms & Conditions | Contact Us  
Copyright © 2011 LexisNexis, a division of Reed Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.



O.C.G.A. § 50-36-1

GEORGIA CODE  
Copyright 2011 by The State of Georgia  
All rights reserved.

\*\*\* Current Through the 2011 Regular Session \*\*\*  
\*\*\* Annotations Current Through April 22, 2011 \*\*\*

TITLE 50. STATE GOVERNMENT  
CHAPTER 36. VERIFICATION OF LAWFUL PRESENCE WITHIN UNITED STATES

O.C.G.A. § **50-36-1** (2011)

§ **50-36-1**. (For effective date, see note.) Verification requirements, procedures, and conditions; exceptions; regulations; criminal and other penalties for violations

(a) As used in this Code section, the term:

(1) "Agency head" means a director, commissioner, chairperson, mayor, councilmember, board member, sheriff, or other executive official, whether appointed or elected, responsible for establishing policy for a public employer.

(2) "Agency or political subdivision" means any department, agency, authority, commission, or government entity of this state or any subdivision of this state.

(3) "Applicant" means any natural person, 18 years of age or older, who has made application for access to public benefits on behalf of an individual, business, corporation, partnership, or other private entity.

(4) (A) "Public benefit" means a federal benefit as defined in 8 U.S.C. Section 1611, a state or local benefit as defined in 8 U.S.C. Section 1621, a benefit identified as a public benefit by the Attorney General of Georgia, or a public benefit which shall include the following:

- (i) Adult education;
- (ii) Authorization to conduct a commercial enterprise or business;
- (iii) Business certificate, license, or registration;
- (iv) Business loan;
- (v) Cash allowance;
- (vi) Disability assistance or insurance;
- (vii) Down payment assistance;
- (viii) Energy assistance;
- (ix) Food stamps;



- (x) Gaming license;
- (xi) Health benefits;
- (xii) Housing allowance, grant, guarantee, or loan;
- (xiii) Loan guarantee;
- (xiv) Medicaid;
- (xv) Occupational license;
- (xvi) Professional license;
- (xvii) Registration of a regulated business;
- (xviii) Rent assistance or subsidy;
- (xix) State grant or loan;
- (xx) State identification card;
- (xxi) Tax certificate required to conduct a commercial business;
- (xxii) Temporary assistance for needy families (TANF);
- (xxiii) Unemployment insurance; and
- (xxiv) Welfare to work.

(B) Each year before August 1, the Attorney General shall prepare a detailed report indicating any "public benefit" that may be administered in this state as defined in 8 U.S.C. Sections 1611 and 1621 and whether such benefit is subject to SAVE verification pursuant to this Code section. Such report shall provide the description of the benefit and shall be updated annually and distributed to the members of the General Assembly and be posted to the Attorney General's website.

(b) Except as provided in subsection (d) of this Code section or where exempted by federal law, every agency or political subdivision shall verify the lawful presence in the United States of any applicant for public benefits.

(c) This Code section shall be enforced without regard to race, religion, gender, ethnicity, or national origin.

(d) Verification of lawful presence under this Code section shall not be required:

(1) For any purpose for which lawful presence in the United States is not required by law, ordinance, or regulation;

(2) For assistance for health care items and services that are necessary for the treatment of an emergency medical condition, as defined in 42 U.S.C. Section 1396b(v)(3), of the alien involved and are not related to an organ transplant procedure;



(3) For short-term, noncash, in-kind emergency disaster relief;

(4) For public health assistance for immunizations with respect to immunizable diseases and for testing and treatment of symptoms of communicable diseases whether or not such symptoms are caused by a communicable disease;

(5) For programs, services, or assistance such as soup kitchens, crisis counseling and intervention, and short-term shelter specified by the United States Attorney General, in the United States Attorney General's sole and unreviewable discretion after consultation with appropriate federal agencies and departments, which:

(A) Deliver in-kind services at the community level, including through public or private nonprofit agencies;

(B) Do not condition the provision of assistance, the amount of assistance provided, or the cost of assistance provided on the individual recipient's income or resources; and

(C) Are necessary for the protection of life or safety;

(6) For prenatal care; or

(7) For postsecondary education, whereby the Board of Regents of the University System of Georgia or the State Board of the Technical College System of Georgia shall set forth, or cause to be set forth, policies regarding postsecondary benefits that comply with all federal law including but not limited to public benefits as described in 8 U.S.C. Section 1611, 1621, or 1623.

(e) (For effective date, see note.) An agency or political subdivision providing or administering a public benefit shall require every applicant for such benefit to:

(1) Provide at least one secure and verifiable document, as defined in Code Section 50-36-2;

(2) Execute a signed and sworn affidavit verifying the applicant's lawful presence in the United States, which affidavit shall state:

(A) The applicant is a United States citizen or legal permanent resident 18 years of age or older; or

(B) The applicant is a qualified alien or nonimmigrant under the federal Immigration and Nationality Act, Title 8 U.S.C., 18 years of age or older lawfully present in the United States and provide the applicant's alien number issued by the Department of Homeland Security or other federal immigration agency; and

(3) The state auditor shall create affidavits for use under this Code section and shall keep a current version of such affidavits on the Department of Audits and Account's official website.

(4) Documents required by this Code section may be submitted electronically, provided the submission complies with Chapter 12 of Title 10.

(f) For any applicant who has executed an affidavit that he or she is an alien lawfully



present in the United States, eligibility for public benefits shall be made through the Systematic Alien Verification of Entitlement (SAVE) program operated by the United States Department of Homeland Security or a successor program designated by the United States Department of Homeland Security. Until such eligibility verification is made, the affidavit may be presumed to be proof of lawful presence for the purposes of this Code section.

(g) Any person who knowingly and willfully makes a false, fictitious, or fraudulent statement of representation in an affidavit executed pursuant to this Code section shall be guilty of a violation of Code Section 16-10-20.

(h) Verification of citizenship through means required by federal law shall satisfy the requirements of this Code section.

(i) It shall be unlawful for any agency or political subdivision to provide or administer any public benefit in violation of this Code section. On or before January 1 of each year, each agency or political subdivision which administers any public benefit shall provide an annual report to the Department of Community Affairs that identifies each public benefit, as defined in subparagraph (a)(3)(A) of this Code section, administered by the agency or political subdivision and a listing of each public benefit for which SAVE authorization for verification has not been received.

(j) Any and all errors and significant delays by SAVE shall be reported to the United States Department of Homeland Security.

(k) Notwithstanding subsection (g) of this Code section, any applicant for public benefits shall not be guilty of any crime for executing an affidavit attesting to lawful presence in the United States that contains a false statement if said affidavit is not required by this Code section.

(l) In the event a legal action is filed against any agency or political subdivision alleging improper denial of a public benefit arising out of an effort to comply with this Code section, the Attorney General shall be served with a copy of the proceeding and shall be entitled to be heard.

(m) Compliance with this Code section by an agency or political subdivision shall include taking all reasonable, necessary steps required by a federal agency to receive authorization to utilize the SAVE program or any successor program designated by the United States Department of Homeland Security or other federal agency, including providing copies of statutory authorization for the agency or political subdivision to provide public benefits and other affidavits, letters of memorandum of understanding, or other required documents or information needed to receive authority to utilize the SAVE program or any successor program for each public benefit provided by such agency or political subdivision. An agency or political subdivision that takes all reasonable, necessary steps and submits all requested documents and information as required in this subsection but either has not been given access to use such programs by such federal agencies or has not completed the process of obtaining access to use such programs shall not be liable for failing to use the SAVE program or any such successor program to verify eligibility for public benefits.

(n) In the case of noncompliance with the provisions of this Code section by an agency or political subdivision, the appropriations committee of each house of the General Assembly may consider such noncompliance in setting the budget and appropriations.

(o) No employer, agency, or political subdivision shall be subject to lawsuit or liability



arising from any act to comply with the requirements of this chapter; provided, however, that the intentional and knowing failure of any agency head to abide by the provisions of this chapter shall:

(1) Be a violation of the code of ethics for government service established in Code Section 45-10-1 and subject such agency head to the penalties provided for in Code Section 45-10-28, including removal from office and a fine not to exceed \$10,000.00; and

(2) Be a high and aggravated misdemeanor offense where such agency head acts to willfully violate the provisions of this Code section or acts so as to intentionally and deliberately interfere with the implementation of the requirements of this Code section.

The Attorney General shall have the authority to conduct a criminal and civil investigation of an alleged violation of this chapter by an agency or agency head and to bring a prosecution or civil action against an agency or agency head for all cases of violations under this chapter. In the event that an order is entered against an employer, the state shall be awarded attorney's fees and expenses of litigation incurred in bringing such an action and investigating such violation.

**HISTORY:** Code 1981, § **50-36-1**, enacted by Ga. L. 2006, p. 105, § 9/SB 529; Ga. L. 2009, p. 8, § 50/SB 46; Ga. L. 2009, p. 970, § 3/HB 2; Ga. L. 2011, p. 632, § 3/HB 49; Ga. L. 2011, p. 794, §§ 16, 17, 18/HB 87.